

N. R. Bowles

2 1/2
3 3 0
10 1
Apt 7 / Vanderbilt

Bright's Anglo Saxon Reader.
" sketch of lit. and chap. on sec.

Ruth Mac Martini

~~Ruth Mac~~ Mulock House

~~La St George's~~ St George's

1st two pages of Wyall.

now received.

W. H. Lawrence

7/0

Victoria-Moderns

S.C.M. BOOK EXCHANGE
U. of T. 39
No. 180 G
Price. 95

S.C.M. BOOK EXCHANGE
U. of T.
No. 330 D
Price 110

95

Historical Outlines of English Phonology and Morphology

MIDDLE ENGLISH AND
MODERN ENGLISH

BY
SAMUEL MOORE
University of Michigan

- Introduction: The Elements of Phonetics.
Part I Modern English Sounds.
Part II The History of English Sounds.
Part III Historical Development of 'Middle
 English Inflections.
Part IV Middle English Dialects.
Part V The Language of Chaucer.
Part VI Historical Development of Modern
 English Inflections.
Appendix: Middle English Spelling.
-

Price \$1.90

GEORGE WAHR, Publisher

Ann Arbor, Michigan

1929

The Elements of Old English

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR and REFERENCE GRAMMAR

By

SAMUEL MOORE

Professor of English, University of Michigan

and

THOMAS A. KNOTT

Formerly Professor of English, University of Iowa

SIXTH EDITION

GEORGE WAHR

ANN ARBOR, MICHIGAN

1930

Copyright 1925

By

SAMUEL MOORE

COMPOSED, PRINTED AND BOUND BY
The Collegiate Press
GEORGE BANTA PUBLISHING COMPANY
MENASHA, WISCONSIN

PREFACE

The primary purpose of the authors of the *Elements of Old English* has been to produce an introductory book which will facilitate and expedite the teaching and study of Old English in such classes as their own, composed of graduate and advanced undergraduate students. To attain this object we have, in the *Elementary Grammar*, selected and arranged the essential paradigms, in the order of their relative importance, into twenty-four chapters designed as progressive lessons. In this part of the book the less frequent variant forms have been omitted. All the grammatical information necessary to enable a student to begin reading freely is contained in the first seven chapters. Each chapter includes a reading selection adapted to the advancing capacity of the student, and accompanied by notes explaining those forms which have not yet been presented systematically. In the chapters the primitive and prehistoric Old English sound changes have been explained more fully on a historical and phonetic basis than is usual in such a book as this, partly in order to clarify and rationalize the apparent irregularities of the inflections, and partly in order to acquaint elementary students with the methods and principles of the historical study of language and linguistic change. In the *Reference Grammar* is given a systematic and ordered treatment of Old English phonology and morphology which serves to bridge the gap between the *Elementary Grammar* and such standard grammars as those of Cosijn, Sievers, Wright, and Bülbring. It was originally intended to include a considerable body of texts with notes and glossary; but to do this at present would render the cost of the book prohibitive.

The *Elementary Grammar* has been used in mimeographed editions at the Universities of Chicago, Michigan, and Wisconsin, at Northwestern University, and at other universities and colleges. It has been twice re-written, and is now issued with the changes suggested by experience and criticism. Further criticisms and corrections from instructors and students will be welcomed.

The authors hope, not perhaps that their efforts will give wide popularity to the study of Old English, but at least that this book will render that study more purposeful, significant, and attractive.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

In the present edition we have corrected all misprints that have come to our attention, have made a few corrections and insertions of omitted words in the glossary, and have made a few revisions in the *Elementary Grammar*. The more important of these revisions are in sections 121, 144, 184, 185. Owing to the continuance of the high printing costs that prevailed when the first edition was published, it has not been possible to include in this edition the texts and enlarged glossary that we hope eventually to add to the book.

SAMUEL MOORE

THOMAS A. KNOTT

April, 1921.

PREFACE TO FIFTH EDITION

The third edition of this book, 1924, was a reprint of the second. The fourth edition, 1925, contained a certain number of corrections and revisions. In the present edition I have replaced sections 1-15 by the corresponding sections of my *Historical Outlines of English Phonology and Morphology* and have made a considerable number of minor corrections, revisions, and additions, chiefly in the *Elementary Grammar* and glossary.

SAMUEL MOORE

December 14, 1926

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

Chapters	Pages
Introduction—The Old English Language	1
I Pronunciation	4
II Masculine a -Declension	19
III Neuter a -Declension; Verbal Endings	23
IV Feminine ō -Declension; Verbal Endings	26
V n -Stems; bēon	29
VI Third Personal Pronoun; Verbal Endings	32
VII Declension of Adjectives	35
VIII Change of a to æ and o ; ðēs	39
IX Breaking; iċ and þū	43
X Diphthongisation by Initial Palatals; hwā , hwæt	46
XI Strong Verbs: Classes I and II	49
XII Strong Verbs: Class III	52
XIII Strong Verbs: Classes IV and V	55
XIV Strong Verbs: Classes VI and VII	58
XV Gemination and Umlaut	62
XVI Syncopated Forms of Strong Verbs; Comparison	67
XVII Weak Verbs: Class I	71
XVIII Weak Verbs: Class I	77
XIX Strong Verbs with j Presents; Numerals	82
XX Weak Verbs: Classes II and III	86
XXI Anomalous Verbs; u -Declension	89
XXII Minor Noun Declensions	94
XXIII Preteritive-Present Verbs	97
XXIV Contract Verbs; Review of Sound Changes	102

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

PHONOLOGY (201-273)	113
Indo-European Sounds in Germanic (201)	114
Vowels (201)	114
Consonants (205)	115
Grimm's Law (205)	115
Verner's Law, Grammatical Change (207)	117
Primitive Germanic Vowel Changes (211)	118
Germanic Vowels in West Germanic (217)	120

Germanic Consonants in West Germanic (220).....	120
Gemination (221).....	121
West Germanic Sounds in Old English (224).....	121
Vowels and Diphthongs (224).....	121
Consonants (235).....	124
Prehistoric Old English Changes (241).....	125
Early Consonant Changes (242).....	125
Vowel Changes (248-260).....	127
Breaking (248).....	127
Diphthongisation by Initial Palatals (250).....	128
<i>i</i> -, <i>i</i> -, <i>j</i> -Umlaut (251).....	128
<i>u</i> -, <i>o</i> -, <i>a</i> -Umlaut (252).....	130
Unaccented Vowels (253).....	131
Syncopation (258).....	132
Consonant Changes (261).....	133
<i>f</i> , <i>þ</i> , <i>s</i> (261).....	133
<i>h</i> (262).....	133
Late Old English Changes (264).....	134
Vowels and Diphthongs (265).....	135
Consonants (273).....	136
MORPHOLOGY (301-446).....	137
Declensions (301-374).....	137
Nouns (307-339).....	139
Masculine <i>a</i> -Stems, <i>stān</i> , <i>dæg</i> (307).....	139
Neuter <i>a</i> -Stems, <i>lim</i> , <i>bān</i> , (309).....	140
<i>ja</i> -Stems (311).....	141
<i>wa</i> -Stems (313).....	142
Feminine <i>ō</i> -Stems, <i>ġiefu</i> , <i>lār</i> (315).....	143
<i>jō</i> -Stems (317).....	144
<i>wō</i> -Stems (319).....	145
Stems in <i>-iþo</i> , <i>strengþu</i> (321).....	145
Stems in <i>-in</i> , <i>brædu</i> (322).....	146
Stems in <i>-ingō</i> , <i>-ungō</i> , <i>leornung</i> (323).....	146
<i>i</i> -Stems, <i>wine</i> , <i>ġiest</i> , <i>cwēn</i> (324).....	147
<i>u</i> -Stems, <i>sunu</i> , <i>duru</i> (328).....	148
<i>n</i> -Stems, <i>hunta</i> , <i>tunge</i> , <i>ēage</i> (331).....	149
<i>iz</i> -, <i>az</i> -Stems, <i>lamb</i> (334).....	150
<i>r</i> -Stems, <i>fæder</i> (335).....	151
<i>þ</i> -Stems, <i>hæleþ</i> (336).....	151
Root Consonant Stems, <i>mann</i> (337).....	152
<i>nd</i> -Stems, <i>frēond</i> , <i>hettend</i> (339).....	153

Pronouns (340-350)	153
Personal, iċ, þū, hē (340-342)	153
Reflexive (343)	154
Possessive (344)	154
Demonstrative, sē, þēs (345)	155
Relative (347)	155
Interrogative hwā, hwæt (348)	156
Indefinite (349)	156
Adjectives (351-369)	157
Strong, sum, gōd (352)	158
Polysyllabic, manig, hālig (355)	159
ja-, jō- Stems, midd, grēne (356)	159
wa-, wō- Stems, ġearu (358)	160
i- Stems (359)	160
u- Stems (360)	161
Participles (361)	161
Weak, gōda (363)	161
Comparison of Adjectives (364)	162
Numerals (370)	164
Adverbs (375)	166
Conjugation (379-446)	168
Verbs (379-446)	168
Strong Verbs (384-422)	170
Class 1, bidan (385)	170
Class 2, bēodan (388)	171
Class 3, bindan, delfan, ċeorfan (392)	172
Class 4, beran (399)	174
Class 5, metan (402)	175
Class 6, dragan (407)	176
Class 7, hātan, bēatan (410)	177
Strong Verbs—Paradigms (417)	179
Personal Endings (418)	181
Contract Verbs, tēon , etc. (419)	182
Syncopation (421)	183
Weak Verbs (423-438)	185
Class I, fremman, dēman (424)	185
Without Middle Vowel, tellan (432)	189
Class II, bodian (434)	190
Class III, habban, libban (436)	192
Preteritive Present Verbs (439)	194
Anomalous Verbs (442)	196
GLOSSARY	199

INTRODUCTION

THE OLD ENGLISH LANGUAGE

Old English (OE), or Anglo-Saxon, as it is often called, is the name given to the English language before the year 1100. The documents containing what we have left of the language extend from about 700 to about 1100, but the great bulk of them represent the speech from 900 to 1050. The language was spoken in four dialects: Northumbrian, Mercian, Kentish, and West-Saxon. Most of the manuscripts, in fact all those containing anything worth reading as literature, are in West-Saxon. We are therefore obliged to make that dialect the basis of our studies, altho in the main Modern Standard English is descended from Mercian. Three important prose works in West-Saxon are in MSS of about 900—Alfred's translation of St. Gregory's *Cura Pastoralis* and of Orosius's *History of the World*, and the Parker MS of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. The language of this period is called Early West-Saxon (EWS). The works—largely homilies—of Ælfric and Wulfstan are in contemporary MSS of about 1050, and the West-Saxon Gospels are of about the same date. The language of these is called Late West-Saxon (LWS). As the norm of our studies we take EWS, and consequently all the selections in the Elementary Grammar are normalised to that dialect.

The Alfredian translations of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, and of Boethius's *De Consolatione Philosophiae* are in a mixed dialect, and the poems in the *Exeter Book*, the *Vercelli Book*, the *Beowulf MS*, and the *Cædmon MS* are not in pure West-Saxon.

· OLD ENGLISH AND ITS RELATED LANGUAGE

The names of actual and hypothetical languages frequently referred to in works on OE and on Germanic Philology are as follows:

Old Frisian (the closest of the Germanic languages to OE) was the language of the Frisians, who lived on the islands and the coast of the North Sea between the Rhine and the Ems. The earliest documents in their language (chiefly laws) date from about 1250 on.

Old Saxon was the language spoken by the continental Saxons thruout nearly the whole of North Germany. The oldest extended document is a metrical paraphrase of a Harmony of the Gospels, called the *Heliand*, dating from about 800.

Old Dutch is known from a few fragments of a translation of the Psalms, of doubtful date, possibly before 1200.

Old High German is known from about 750. It includes a considerable amount of material, chiefly religious, partly prose and partly poetry, down to about 1100. It falls into two main groups of dialects: Frankish, which was spoken in the west and northwest; and Upper German, which included Alemanic (spoken in Switzerland) and Bavarian.

Old Norse includes the dialects spoken in Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Iceland up to the time of the Reformation. The earliest records of Old Norse are runic inscriptions dating from the third century. The most important literature is in Icelandic, which is known from a rich literature preserved in MSS dating from about 1200 on.

Gothic is known from rather extensive fragments of a translation of the Bible made before 400 by Wulfilas, a Gothic bishop, for the West Goths along the Danube.

All these languages are called Germanic. Gothic is called East Germanic; Old Norse is called North Germanic; and Old

High German, Old Dutch, Old Saxon, Old Frisian, and Old English are called West Germanic.

The terms Germanic (Gmc) and West Germanic (WGmc) are used to designate not only groups of languages, but also the hypothetical reconstruction of the parent language of the group as it existed at a prehistoric period. Thus the term WGmc is applied to forms or sounds which we must presuppose at the period when we may presume that all the WGmc languages were nearly or quite identical. The term Gmc is applied to forms or sounds of the period at which we may presume that all the Gmc languages were nearly identical. Likewise, the terms Primitive and Prehistoric OE are applied to hypothetically reconstructed stages of OE. Primitive OE is the term that we apply to the hypothetically reconstructed English language before, roughly, the year 500 A.D. Prehistoric OE is the term that we apply to the reconstructed language from about 500 to about 700.

Thus, by comparing Gothic **stain-s**, Primitive Old Norse **stain-a-R**, Old Saxon **stēn**, Old High German **stein**, and OE **stān**, we reconstruct a Primitive Gmc form ***stain-a-z**.¹ Likewise, by comparing Gothic **dōmjan**, Old Saxon **dōmian**, and OE **dēman**, we reconstruct a Primitive OE form ***dōmjan**.

Indo-European (also called Indo-Germanic and sometimes Aryan) is a term applied to a group of languages which includes Sanskrit, Lithuanian, the Slavic languages, Latin, Greek, the Celtic languages, and the Germanic languages. The term is also applied to forms and sounds hypothetically reconstructed by a comparison of these various languages.

¹Hypothetical or prehistoric forms are preceded by an asterisk.

CHAPTER I

PRONUNCIATION

THE ELEMENTS OF PHONETICS

1. **Organs of Speech.** The primary condition for the production of speech-sounds is the passage of a stream of breath thru the mouth passage or thru the nasal passage or thru both. This stream of breath is modified in various ways by movements of the organs of speech. The principal movable organs concerned in the production of English speech-sounds are the so-called vocal cords, situated in the larynx; the soft palate or velum; the tongue; the lips; and the lower jaw. The velum (which terminates below in the uvula) forms the back part of the roof of the mouth, the hard palate forming the front part.

2. **Voiced and Voiceless Sounds.** With reference to the action of the vocal cords, sounds are either voiced or voiceless. In the production of a voiceless sound, the stream of air passes freely thru the larynx; the vocal cords are separated, so that they offer no impediment to the stream of air and therefore do not vibrate. But in the production of a voiced sound, the vocal cords are drawn into contact or close together so that they are caused to vibrate by the stream of air which passes between them. This vibration can be felt by placing the first two fingers upon the larynx or "Adam's apple" while one is pronouncing a vowel sound, or the consonant *v*. All vowel sounds are ordinarily voiced, but some consonants are voiced and some are voiceless.¹ It is chiefly voice that distinguishes *g* (as in *get*)

¹ Vowels and the consonants that are ordinarily voiced can also be whispered. In whispering the opening of the glottis (i.e. the space between the vocal cords) is such that the passage of the stream of air causes friction but not those regular vibrations that characterize voice. Speakers of English very commonly whisper the last of two voiced consonants that terminate a word followed by a

from **k** (as in **kept**), **d** from **t**, **b** from **p**, **v** from **f**, **z** (as in **zoo**) from **s** (as in **soon**), and the sound of **th** in **then** from the sound of **th** in **thin**.²

3. Stops and Spirants. With reference to the manner of their articulation, consonants are distinguished as stopped consonants (or explosives) and open consonants (or spirants). In the production of stopped consonants, the breath stream is stopped at some point by the complete closing of the mouth passage. If (as is usually the case) it is the outgoing breath stream that is stopped, the density of the air behind the stoppage becomes greater than the density of the outer air, so that when the stop is opened an explosion occurs. In the production of open consonants or spirants, however, the breath stream is not completely stopped but is made to pass thru an opening so narrow that the friction causes a buzzing or hissing noise. Stopped consonants are Modern English **g** (as in **go**)³ **k**, **d**, **t**, **b**, **p**; open consonants are **z**, **s**, **th** (as in **then**), **th** (as in **thin**), **v**, **f**. The **ch** in **chill** and the **g** in **gin** are combinations of a stop consonant with an open consonant (approximately **t** with **sh** and **d** with **s** as in **measure**). In these combinations the closure for the stop and for the open consonant is made at the same or

pause (e.g. in **leaves**). Voiceless consonants are probably not modified when we whisper, but are made with the glottis open as in ordinary speech.

² By practice one may soon learn to distinguish voiced sounds from voiceless ones. A good exercise for practice is to pronounce alternately **s** and **z**, **f** and **v**, and the two sounds of **th**, taking care to pronounce the consonant sound **alone** without the aid of a vowel. The sounds of **t** and **d**, **p** and **b**, etc., when pronounced without a vowel, will also be felt and heard to be very different in character. It will also be observed that voiced sounds, whether vowels or consonants, are capable of being uttered with variations of musical pitch without changing the shape of the mouth cavity, whereas voiceless sounds are not. Of the following words, which begin with a voiced and which with a voiceless consonant: **let**, **met**, **net**, **rat**, **shut**, **chin**?

³ Are **r**, **sh**, and **l** open consonants or stopped consonants?

nearly the same point, and when the stop is opened the explosion occurs thru the narrow opening of the spirant; such combinations are called **affricates**.

4. The complete or partial closure required to produce stops and open consonants is usually made by means of the tongue or lips, and the quality of the various sounds is determined by the manner in which the closure is made. Modern English **g** (as in **go**) and **c** (as in **comb**) are produced by contact of the tongue against the soft palate; **y** (as in **yield**) is made with an incomplete closure between the tongue and the hard palate; **d** and **t** are made by contact of the tongue against the ridge above the upper front teeth or against the teeth themselves; **z** and **s** are made with an incomplete closure at the same point; **b** and **p** are produced by a closure of the two lips; **v** and **f** are produced with an incomplete closure between the lower lip and the upper front teeth; **th** as in **then** and **th** as in **thin** are produced by causing air to pass between the tongue and the backs or edges of the upper front teeth.

According to the place of their formation, these consonants are therefore classified as velar consonants (**g** as in **go**, **c** as in **comb**); palatal consonants (**y**); dental consonants (**d**, **t**, **z**, **s**, **th** in **then**, **th** in **thin**); and labial consonants (**b**, **p**, **v**, **f**).

5. **Nasal and Oral Consonants.** All of the consonants mentioned in the preceding paragraph are oral consonants. Nasal consonants are **m**, **n**, and **ng** (as in **thing**). In the articulation of the oral consonants, the velum is retracted until it makes contact with the back wall of the throat, which at the same time moves forward so as to close the passage from the throat to the nasal cavity. In the articulation of nasal consonants, however, the velum is in the position it occupies in ordinary breathing, and the mouth passage is stopped by the lips or tongue, being made for **m**, **n**, and **ng**, precisely as for **b**, **d**, and **g**, respectively.

Vowels are normally oral sounds, but they become nasalized if the velum is not completely retracted and the passage to the nasal cavity is partly open. Consonants are also nasalized when they are pronounced with incomplete retraction of the velum. The nasalized vowels of Modern French are pronounced with no retraction of the velum and with the passage from the throat to the nasal cavity wide open.

6. Vowels. Vowel sounds are more open than open consonant sounds. In the formation of an open consonant, a stream of air is made to pass thru an opening so narrow that the passage of the air causes friction and therefore noise. In the formation of a vowel, however, the mouth opening is so wide that the friction of the air against the sides of the opening causes very little noise or none at all.

7. Open and Close Vowels. But the vowels are not all equally open in their formation. If one pronounces in order the vowel sounds of the words **hat, hate, heat**, he will observe that in pronouncing each of these successive sounds the tongue is closer to the roof of the mouth. When we pronounce the series, the tongue starts from a position considerably below the roof of the mouth and ends in a position quite close to the roof of the mouth. This can be felt, and it can also be seen by pronouncing the sounds before a mirror. The same thing can be observed in regard to the vowels of the words **law, low, loot**. As we pronounce this series of vowels, we can feel the tongue going higher in the mouth, and we can see it indirectly by watching the upward movement of the lower jaw as we pronounce the three sounds before a mirror.

8. This difference in openness or height is the basis of one of the most important classifications of vowel sounds. We distinguish at least three degrees in the height of vowel sounds. If the tongue is quite close to the roof of the mouth, we call the

vowel a **high** vowel. If the tongue occupies a low position in the mouth, we call the vowel a **low** vowel. If the tongue is in a position about midway between its extreme high position and its extreme low position, we call the vowel a **mid** vowel. So the vowels of **law** and **hat** are **low** vowels, the vowels of **low** and **hate** are **mid** vowels, and the vowels of **loot** and **heat** are **high** vowels.

9. Back and Front Vowels. When we pronounce in succession the two series of vowels heard in **law**, **low**, **loot**, and **hat**, **hate**, **heat**, we can perceive that the tongue lies differently as we utter the two series. When we pronounce the vowels of **law**, **low**, **loot**, the tongue is closest to the **back** part of the roof of the mouth. When we pronounce the vowels of **hat**, **hate**, **heat**, the tongue is closest to the **front** part of the roof of the mouth. This can be felt, and it can also be seen to a certain extent by looking into the mouth as we pronounce the two series of sounds before a mirror. We therefore call the vowels of **law**, **low**, **loot**, **back** vowels, and the vowels of **hat**, **hate**, **heat** **front** vowels. This is the second basis of the classification of vowel sounds.

10. Combining the two classifications of vowel sounds, we say that the vowel of **hat** is a **low front** vowel, that the vowel of **hate** is a **mid front** vowel, that the vowel of **heat** is a **high front** vowel, that the vowel of **law** is a **low back** vowel, that the vowel of **low** is a **mid back** vowel, and that the vowel of **loot** is a **high back** vowel.⁴

11. Round and Unround vowels. If one pronounces before a mirror the two series of vowel sounds heard in **hat**, **hate**, **heat**, and **law**, **low**, **loot**, he will see that the action of the lips in pronouncing the two series is not the same. In pronouncing the

⁴ Some vowels, for example **a** in English **Cuba**, **e** in German **gabe**, **e** in French **je**, are neither front vowels nor back vowels. They occur chiefly in unstressed syllables and are generally termed **mixed** vowels.

first series, the lips are either in the neutral position which they occupy when they are in a position of rest with the mouth slightly open, or else the lip opening is enlarged by a slight depression of the lower lip or by drawing apart the corners of the mouth. But in pronouncing the latter series the lip opening is modified by bringing together the corners of the mouth, with or without raising the lower lip. On the basis of this difference in the action of the lips we make the distinction between **round** and **unround** vowels, and call the vowel of **law** a **low back round** vowel, the vowel of **low** a **mid back round** vowel, and the vowel of **loot** a **high back round** vowel. The vowels of **hat**, **hate**, **heat**, on the other hand, are **unround** vowels.

Round vowels differ considerably in the degree of their rounding. The vowel of **loot** is more rounded than the vowel of **low**, and the vowel of **low** is more rounded than the vowel of **law**; in fact some speakers of English pronounce the vowel of **law** with very little rounding or none at all.

12. All of the English front vowels are unround, but front round vowels occur in French and German. The vowels of French **une** and German **kühn** and **müssen** are high front round vowels. The vowels of French **peu** and German **schön** and **hölle** are mid front round vowels. The vowels of **une** and **kühn** may be roughly described as formed with the tongue position of the vowel of English **heat** and the lip rounding of the vowel of English **loot**. The vowel of **müssen** may be described as formed with the tongue position of the vowel of English **hit** and the lip rounding of the vowel of English **full**. The vowels of **peu** and **schön** may be described as formed with the tongue position of the vowel of English **hate** and the lip rounding of the vowel of English **note**. And the vowel of **hölle** may be described as formed with the tongue position of the vowel of English **bet** and the lip rounding of the vowel of English **law**.

13. **Tense and Lax vowels.** If we pronounce the vowel of **loot** and then the vowel of **look**, the vowel of **beat** and then the vowel of **bit**, we can feel in pronouncing the first vowel of each pair a degree of tenseness in the tongue that we do not feel in pronouncing the second vowel of the pair. The first pair of vowels are both high back round vowels, the second pair are both high front unround vowels, yet the acoustic quality of the first member of each pair is distinctly different from that of the second member. This difference of acoustic quality is chiefly the result of the difference that we observe in the tenseness of the tongue. We therefore call the vowels of **loot** and **beat** **tense** vowels and the vowels of **look** and **bit** **lax** vowels. The distinction between tense and lax vowels is most clearly perceptible and most distinct in its acoustic effect in the high vowels, but we find the same difference, tho in a less degree, in the mid and low vowels. The vowel of **bait** differs from the vowel of **bet** chiefly in being more tense, at least in American English. The vowel of **earth** is tense, and the vowel of the second syllable of **Cuba**, tho made with nearly the same tongue position, is lax. The vowels of **note** and **naught** are also tense. The vowel of the first syllable of **fairy** is tense in the speech of some persons and lax in the speech of others. The other vowels of English are all lax.

We should understand, however, in making this distinction between tense and lax vowels that the distinction is a relative one. All the English vowels are lax as compared with the stressed vowels of French, which are all very tense. The German short vowels are lax, and the long vowels are tense, tho less tense than those of French. And the English tense vowels are less tense than the German tense vowels.

14. **Quantity of Vowels.** The foregoing classification of vowel sounds has reference only to the **quality** of vowels. But vowels differ from each other not only in quality but also in

quantity or length of duration. With regard to quantity, vowels are commonly distinguished as **long** and **short**. But the student must be on his guard against the phonetically **incorrect** use of the terms long and short that he finds in Modern English dictionaries. The vowel of **bite**, for example, is called "long i" and the vowel of **bit** "short i," but the first is really a diphthong and the second a simple vowel; the vowel of **mate** is called "long a" and the vowel of **mat** "short a," but the two vowels differ in quality as well as quantity, for the first is a mid front unround vowel and the second is a low front unround vowel; the vowel of **loot** is called "long oo" and the vowel of **look** "short oo," but tho they are both high back round vowels they are not a longer and shorter variety of the same vowel, for the first vowel is tense and the second is lax. Differences of mere quantity or duration in vowels of the same quality do occur, however, in Modern English. The vowel of **gnaw** is longer than the vowel of **gnawed** and the vowel of **gnawed** is longer than the vowel of **naught**, tho the quality of the vowel is the same in the three words. But this variation depends on the phonetic environment of the vowel; a vowel is longer when it is **final** than when it is followed by a consonant, and longer when it is followed by a voiced consonant than when it is followed by a voiceless consonant. This variation of vowel quantity according to the phonetic environment of the vowel is made automatically by speakers of English.

In the speech of some persons who do not pronounce **r** before consonants the words **heart** and **hot**, **hard** and **hod**, **part** and **pot**, etc., differ only in the fact that the vowel of the first word of each pair is of longer duration than the vowel of the second word of the pair. And in the speech of perhaps the majority of Americans the words **balm** and **bomb** differ only in the fact that the vowel of the first word is longer than the vowel of the second. With these exceptions, however, differ-

ences in vowel quantity are not in themselves significant for the expression of meaning in Modern English, but are either dependent on the phonetic environment of the vowel or are combined with differences in vowel quality.

15. Diphthongs. A diphthong consists of two vowels pronounced in a single syllable. In Modern English we have diphthongs in the words *foil*, *foul*, and *file*.

PRONUNCIATION OF OLD ENGLISH

16. Alphabet. The Old English alphabet had two letters, **þ** and **ð**, which are not contained in the modern English alphabet. The former is called "thorn," and the latter "crossed *d*" or "eth" (*th* as in *then*). The capital of **ð** is **Ð**. In the manuscripts these two characters are used indiscriminately for the voiced and voiceless sounds of Modern English *th*. The old English scribes did not use the letters **j**, **q**, **v**, and **z**; they used the letter **k** only rarely.⁷

17. Vowels. The Old English vowels were pronounced approximately as follows:

a	like o	in <i>hot</i> ⁸	habban
ā	" a	" <i>father</i>	stān
æ	" a	" <i>hat</i>	æt
ǣ	" ai	" <i>airy</i>	dǣd
e, e⁹	" e	" <i>met</i>	stelan, beðd

⁷ The character for **w** in the MSS is quite different from the modern English character, but in printed texts the modern **w** is substituted for it. Most of the characters in the OE alphabet were more or less different in shape from those of the modern English alphabet.

⁸ The "short **o**" of *hot*, *not*, etc., as pronounced unrounded in most parts of the United States, is really the short variety of the **a** in *father*. The rounded vowel used in eastern New England and England, however, is approximately the sound of short **o** in Old English.

⁹ **ē** is a character used by some editors of OE texts to distinguish the **-e** sound which was the result of umlaut (see Chapter XV). The MSS have only one character, **e**.

ē	“ a	“ <i>fate</i>	dēman
ī	“ i	“ <i>bit</i>	biton
ī	“ i	“ <i>machine</i>	bitan
o, q ¹⁰	“ au	“ <i>audacious</i>	holpen, bōnd
ō	“ o	“ <i>note</i>	dōm
u	“ u	“ <i>pull</i>	full
ū	“ oo	“ <i>doom</i>	tūn
y	“ ü	“ <i>German müssen</i>	fyllan
ȳ	“ üh	“ <i>kühn</i>	tȳnan

18. With regard to their formation (see 10-13), *u*, *ū*, *o*, *q*, and *ō* are **back round** vowels; *a* and *ā* are **back unround** vowels. The other vowels are **front** vowels; *y* and *ȳ* are **front round** vowels; *i*, *ī*, *e*, *ē*, *æ*, and *ǣ* are **front unround** vowels.

19. **Diphthongs.** The Old English diphthongs were pronounced approximately as follows:

ea	like a	in <i>hat</i> plus a in <i>Cuba</i>	healp
ēa	“ ai	“ <i>airy</i> plus a in <i>Cuba</i>	bēam
eo	“ e	“ <i>met</i> plus o in <i>poetic</i>	weorc
ēo	“ a	“ <i>fate</i> plus o in <i>poetic</i>	bēodan
io ¹¹	“ i	“ <i>bit</i> plus o in <i>poetic</i>	liornian
īo ¹¹	“ i	“ <i>machine</i> plus o in <i>poetic</i>	liode
ie ¹²	“ i	“ <i>bit</i> plus a in <i>Cuba</i>	ieldran
īe ¹²	“ i	“ <i>machine</i> plus a in <i>Cuba</i>	hīeran

These diphthongs were usually accented on the first element.

20. **Consonants.** Old English *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *t*, *w*, and *x* were pronounced approximately as in Modern English. Double consonants, however, were really double, as in Modern English *pen-knife*, *book-case*, *grab-bag*, as distinguished from *penny*, *bookish*, and *grabbing*:—**winnan**, **bucca**, **webba**.

¹⁰ *q* is the character used by some editors of OE texts for the *o* which developed from *a* before nasals; *q* does not occur in the MSS.

¹¹ *io* and *īo* occur chiefly in EWS; in LWS they are usually represented by *eo* and *ēo*.

¹² *ie* and *īe* occur chiefly in EWS; in LWS they are usually represented by *y*, *ī*, and *ȳ*, *ī*.

21. **r** was strongly trilled with the tip of the tongue:—**rīdan, faran, ær.**

22. **cg** was probably pronounced like **dg** in Modern English *bridge*:—**brycg, licgan.**

23. **f, s,** and **þ, ð** represent respectively the sounds of **f** in *father*, **s** in *soon*, and **th** in *thin*:

(a) Initially:—**fæder, sōna, þanc, ðær.**

(b) Finally:—**stæf, wæs, swæþ, āð.**

(c) Before voiceless consonants:—**eft, fæst, hæsp.**

(d) When doubled:—**Offa, mæsse, siþþan, oððe.**

f, s, and **þ, ð** represent respectively the sounds of **v** in *over*, **z** in *prize*, and **th** in *then*:

(a) Between vowels:—**ofer, rīsan, swiþe, cweðan.**

(b) Between vowels and voiced consonants:—**healfe, hæfde, hūsles, hāþnan, eorðe.**¹³

24. Old English **g** represents two sounds, a front (or palatal) open consonant, and a back (or velar) open consonant. The front sound was that of **y** in Modern English *yield*. The back sound was that of **g** in North German *sagen*. This sound may be acquired in either of two ways: by pronouncing the vowel of Modern English *woo* without rounding of the lips and with the tongue so close to the roof of the mouth that a buzzing sound instead of a clear vowel is produced; or by relaxing the contact between the tongue and the roof of the mouth while one pronounces the **g** of Modern English *goose*.¹⁴ In this book

¹³ **f, s,** and **þ, ð** at the beginning or end of elements of compound words were pronounced as if the elements of the compound were separate words: **of-línann, ā-síttan, ġe-sæt, oð-lædan, ā-férian.**

¹⁴ If one is unable to acquire this sound he may substitute for it the stop **g** in Modern English *goose*.

the front or palatal sound of **ġ** is indicated by a dot over the letter. The back sound is left unmarked.

25. **ġ** has the front or palatal sound, that of *y* in Modern English *yield*:

- (a) Initially before **e**,¹⁵ **ē**,¹⁵ **i**, **ī**, **ea**, **ēa**, **eo**, **ēo**, **io**, **īo**, **ie**, **ie**:—**ġeworden**, **ġē**, **ġift**, **ġisel**, **ġeaf**, **ġēafon**, **ġeorn**, **ġēotan**, **ġiefan**, **ġiet**.
- (b) At the end of a word or syllable when preceded by a front vowel (**æ**, **ǣ**, **e**, **ē**, **i**, or **ī**):—**mæġ**, **mǣġ**, **weġ**, **swēġ**, **hālīg**, **wīġ**; **sægde**, **bregdan**.
- (c) Medially between front vowels:—**dægēs**, **weġes**, **stīġe**.
- (d) When originally followed in Prehistoric OE by **i**, **ī**, or **j**¹⁶:—**bīegān**, **byrġ**.

26. In all other cases except those specified in the preceding paragraph **ġ** has the back sound:—**ġatu**, **ġēs**, **ġyrdan**, **ġod**, **ġōd**, **ġuma**, **ġūð**, **ġlidan**, **ġrinnan**, **dagas**, **dagum**, **fāġ**.

27. Old English **c** also represented two sounds, a back (or velar) consonant and a front or palatal consonant. The back sound was that of **k**. The front sound was probably that of **ch** in Modern English *chalk*, *teach*.¹⁷ In this book the front or palatal sound of **ċ** is indicated by a dot over the letter. The back sound is left unmarked.

¹⁵ Unless the **e** or **ē** is the result of umlaut (see Chapter XV).

¹⁶ The character **j**, wherever it is employed in this book, has the value of **j** in Modern German *Jahr*, which is that of *y* in Modern English *yield*. It is therefore preferable to call the sound by the German name of the character, "yot," rather than by its English name, "jay."

¹⁷ Palatal **c** was at first a palatal stop, similar to the **k** in Modern English *kid*, but with the stoppage made farther forward in the mouth. Later it developed in the WS dialect into the sound of **ch** as in *church*. It is probable that it had reached the **ch** stage before the year 900.

28. **ċ** has the front or palatal sound, that of **ch** in Modern English *chalk*:

(a) Initially before **e**,¹⁸ **ē**¹⁸, **i**, **ī**, **ea**, **ēa**, **eo**, **ēo**, **io**, **īo**, **ie**, **ie**:—**ċild**, **ċīdan**, **ċealc**, **ċēapman**, **ċeorl**, **ċēosan**, **ċiest**, **ċiese** (compare Modern English *child*, *chide*, *chalk*, *chapman*, *churl*, *choose*, *chest*, *cheese*).

(b) Finally after **i**, **ī**:—**īċ**, **diċ**, **swelċ** (from ***swaliċ**).

(c) When originally followed in Prehistoric OE by **i**, **ī**, or **j**:—**sēċan**, **ðenċan**, **ċirīce**.

29. In all other cases except those specified in the preceding paragraph **c** has the sound of **k**:—**calan**, **cennan**, **cōm**, **cuman**, **cyning**, **āc**, **cræft**.

30. **ng** was pronounced as in Modern English *finger*, not as in *ring*:—**hungor**, **singan**, **ðing**.¹⁹

31. **sc** probably had the sound of **sh**²⁰ in Modern English *ship*:—**scip**, **scīnan**, **scrūd**, **sceal**, **fisc** (compare *ship*, *shine*, *shroud*, *shall*, *fish*).²¹

32. **h** represented two sounds:

(a) Initially before vowels it was pronounced like **h** in Modern English *hand*:—**hand**, **hūs**.

(b) Before consonants and after vowels it was pronounced like **ch** in German *ich*, *macht*:—**niht**, **sōhte**, **seah**, **feoh**, **hræfn**.

¹⁸ Unless the **e** or **ē** is the result of umlaut (see Chapter XV).

¹⁹ When it was followed in Prehistoric OE by **i**, **ī**, or **j**, **ng** appears to have had the sound of **ng** as in *singe*; this sound of **ng**, however, is of very little importance in the later history of the language and is not marked in this book.

²⁰ In the opinion of some scholars, however, the pronunciation was that of **s** followed by the palatal stop described above in note 17.

²¹ **sc**, however, had the sound of **sk** in a few late loan words and in a few words in which late metathesis (transposition of sounds) had occurred: **scōl** (from Latin *schōla*), **āscian** (from *ācsian*).

33. To summarise briefly the preceding paragraphs, the Old English consonants were pronounced approximately as follows:

ċ		like	ch	in	<i>chalk</i>
c		"	c	"	<i>call</i>
cg		"	dg	"	<i>bridge</i>
f	initially, finally, and before voiceless consonants . .	"	f	"	<i>father</i>
f	between vowels, or between vowels and voiced conso- nants	"	v	"	<i>over</i>
ff		"	f	"	<i>father</i>
ġ		"	y	"	<i>yield</i>
g		"	g	"	German <i>sagen</i>
h	initially before vowels . .	"	h	"	<i>hand</i>
h	before consonants and after vowels.	"	ch	"	German <i>ich, macht</i>
ng		"	ng	"	<i>finger</i>
r	strongly trilled with the tip of the tongue				
s	initially, finally, and before voiceless consonants . .	"	s	"	<i>soon</i>
s	between vowels, or between vowels and voiced conso- nants	"	z	"	<i>prize</i>
sc		"	sh	"	<i>ship</i>
ss		"	s	"	<i>soon</i>
þ, ð	initially, finally, and before voiceless consonants . .	"	th	"	<i>thin</i>
þ, ð	between vowels, or between vowels and voiced conso- nants	"	th	"	<i>then</i>
4þ, 5ð		"	th	"	<i>thin</i>

The other consonants were pronounced approximately as in Modern English.

ACCENTUATION

34. The following rules in regard to accentuation, tho they are not exhaustive, will suffice for the reading of Old English prose; the minor details of accentuation are best learned in connection with the study of poetical texts.

35. Simple words (i.e., those which are not compounds) are accented on the first syllable:—**f**æder, **s**ǣgde, **l**úfian, **cw**éðende, **l**éornode, **l**éornunga.

36. Compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs are accented on the first syllable of the **first** element of the compound unless the first element is **be-**, **ge**, or **for-**:—**c**órn-hūs, **d**ēaþ-stede, **t**ō-weard, **é**arfoð-liçe, **be-b**ód, **ge-f**éoht, **for-b**ód. Compound verbs are accented on the first syllable of the **second** element of the compound:—**wi**ð-stóndan, **ā-r**isan, **on-f**ón.²²

²² As an alternative to the rules given in the text, the following may be serviceable:

Rule: Accent the first syllable.

Exceptions: (1) Accent the root syllable of all verbal compounds.

(2) Accent the root syllable of all other compounds beginning with **be-**, **ge-**, or **for-**.

CHAPTER II

MASCULINE **a**-DECLENSION

37. **Cases.** Old English has five cases, nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and instrumental. The instrumental is the case which denotes agency, means, or instrument. In the declension of nouns it does not differ in form from the dative, but there are different forms for the two cases in the masculine and neuter singular of the definite article and of the strong adjective.

38. **Genders.** Old English has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter, which, like those of Modern German, are not dependent on sex. For example, **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine, **tunge**, *tongue*, is feminine, and **ēage**, *eye*, is neuter.

39. The masculine a-declension (also called the strong masculine declension) includes nearly all masculine nouns which end in a consonant or in -e. Typical examples are **sē stān**, **sē dæg**, **sē engel**, and **sē ende**, for the declension of which see 41 below.

This declension includes "a-stems," "ja-stems," and "wa-stems." For a systematic treatment of these see the Reference Grammar (307-313).

40. The definite article, of which the masculine nominative form is **sē**, has two uses; it is either a definite article or a demonstrative. For example, **sē stān** means either *the stone* or *that stone*. When, as is usually the case, it modifies a noun, it agrees with that noun in gender, number, and case. It may

also, however, be used as a pronoun, and when so used it agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but has the case which is demanded by its construction in the sentence. For example, *Ic seah ðone monn in ðām felde; sē is gōd þēow; I saw the man in the field; he (or that man) is a good servan'.*

41. Paradigms of *sē stān, the stone; sē dæg, the day; sē engel, the angel; and sē ende, the end:*

Sing.					Endings	
Nom.	sē stān	dæg	engel	ende	—	-e
Gen.	ðæs stānes	dægēs	engles	endes	-es	-es
Dat.	ðām (ðām) stāne	dæge	engle	ende	-e	-e
Acc.	ðone stān	dæg	engel	ende	—	-e
Inst.	ðy (ðon, ðē) stāne	dæge	engle	ende	-e	-e
Plur.						
Nom., Acc.	ðā stānas	dagas	englas	endas	-as	-as
Gen.	ðāra stāna	daga	engla	enda	-a	-a
Dat., Inst.	ðām (ðām) stānum	dagum	englum	endum	-um	-um

42. The interchange of *æ* and *a* which appears in the paradigm of *dæg* is the result of the fact that in a very early stage of Prehistoric Old English the vowel *a* changed to *æ* except when it occurred before a single consonant followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*.²³ It will be observed that the inflected forms of *engel* lack the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the uninflected form; this variation is frequent, but not universal, in the declension of dissyllabic masculine nouns which end in a consonant.

43. **Plurals in -e.** A few nouns (chiefly names of tribes or peoples) form their Nom. Acc. Plur. in -e instead of -as.

²³ Further details in regard to this sound change will be given in Chapter VIII.

For example, **Dene**, *Danes*, and **Engle**, (*the*) *English*, are declined as follows:

Plur. Nom., Acc.	Dene	Engle
Gen.	Dena	Engla
Dat., Inst.	Denum	Englum

These nouns are "i-stems"; for further details in regard to them see the Reference Grammar (324).

44. Verbs. The Old English verb has (in addition to the infinitive and participles) three moods, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. It has two tenses, the present and the preterit (or past), and each tense has two numbers, singular and plural.

READING

45. Tō þæs æðelinges hāme wāron fela weras ġegaderod. þā eorlas hæfdon þā mēcas and þā helmas þāra Dena, þā þe hīe on þām campe ofercōmon. Sum ġeong eorl hæfde þone hafoc mid ðām ðe hē fuglas ġefēng. Swā ēac wāron þær þā ierðlingas þe on hærfeſte of þām æcerum wæſtmas ālæddon, and þā fiſceras þe on bātum fiſcas ġefēngon.

The notes to the reading selections are intended to explain all grammatical forms which the student has not yet learned, except those which are explained by cross references in the Glossary at the end of the book.

hāme, the more frequent dat. sing. of this word is **hām**.

wāron, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **wesan**.

fela, an indeclinable neuter, *many, much*, is followed by the genitive.

ġegaderod, past participle of **ġegaderian**.

hæfdon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **habban**.

þā þe, *whom*; the demonstrative **sē**, either accompanied or not by the relative particle **þe**, is used as a relative pronoun.

hīe, *they*, nom. plur. of the third personal pronoun, **hē**

ofercōmon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **ofercuman**.

hæfde, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **habban**.

ðam ðe, see note on **þā þe** above.

ġefēng, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **ġefōn**.

ālæddon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **ālædan**.

þe, the indeclinable relative particle, *who, which that*.

ġefēngon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **ġefōn**.

ex. 12

Handwritten notes and examples in Old English script, including phrases like "ġefēngon", "þe", and "ālæddon".

CHAPTER III

NEUTER a-DECLENSION

VERBAL ENDINGS

46. The neuter a-declension (also called the strong neuter declension) includes nearly all neuter nouns which end in a consonant or -e.

This declension includes "a-stems," "ja-stems," and "wa-stems." For a systematic treatment of these see the Reference Grammar (307, 314).

47. Paradigms of *ðæt lim*, *the limb*; *ðæt bān*, *the bone*; *ðæt word*, *the word*; *ðæt riċe*, *the kingdom*; and *ðæt tungol*, *the star*:

Sing.						Endings	
Nom.	ðæt lim	bān	word	riċe	tungol	—	-e
Gen.	ðæs limes	bānes	wordes	riċes	tungles	-es	-es
Dat.	ðæm (ðām) lime	bāne	worde	riċe	tungle	-e	-e
Acc.	ðæt lim	bān	word	riċe	tungol	—	-e
Inst.	ðȳ (ðon, ðē) lime	bāne	worde	riċe	tungle	-e	-e
Plur.							
Nom., Acc.	ðā limu	bān	word	riċu	tungol, tunglu	-u, —	-u
Gen.	ðāra lima	bāna	worda	riċa	tungla	-a	-a
Dat., Inst.	ðæm (ðām) limum	bānum	wordum	riċum	tunglum	-um	-um

48. Monosyllabic neuters have the ending -u in the Nom. Acc. Plur. when, as in *lim*, the stem of the word is a short syllable; a syllable is short when it contains a short vowel or short diphthong followed by a single consonant. Monosyllabic neuters are without ending in the Nom. Acc. Plur. when, as in *bān* or *word*, the stem is a long syllable; a syllable is long when

it contains a long vowel or long diphthong, or a short vowel or short diphthong followed by more than one consonant.

Dissyllabic neuters ending in **-e** are declined like **rīce**. Dissyllabic neuters ending in a consonant sometimes have and sometimes do not have the ending **-u** in the Nom. Acc. Plur. It will be observed that the inflected forms of **tungol** lack the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the uninflected form; this variation is frequent, but not universal, in the declension of dissyllabic neuter nouns which end in a consonant.

49. Weak Verbs. In Old English, as in all other Germanic languages, there are two conjugations of verbs, the strong and the weak. Weak verbs form their preterit by means of a suffix containing **d** or **t** followed by endings indicative of person and number. In some verbs the suffix is added directly to the stem, in other verbs a middle vowel, **e** or **o**, intervenes between the stem and the suffix. The ending may therefore be **-ede**, **-de**, **-te**, or **-ode**. The past participle of weak verbs is formed by the addition of **d** or **t**, usually preceded by the vowel **e** or **o** but sometimes added directly to the stem. The ending may therefore be **-ed**, **-d**, **-t**, or **-od**.

50. Principal Parts. The principal parts of a weak verb are: (1) the infinitive, (2) the preterit indicative first person singular, (3) the past participle. Following are the principal parts of **fremman**, *make*; **nerian**, *save*; **dēman**, *judge*; **lādan**, *lead*; **sēcān**, *seek*; **lufian**, *love*; **habban**, *have*:

fremm-an	frem-e-de	frem-ed
ner-ian	ner-e-de	ner-ed
dēm-an	dēm-de	dēm-ed
lād-an	lād-de	lād-ed
sēc-an	sōh-te	sōh-t
luf-ian	luf-o-de	luf-od
habb-an	hæf-de	hæf-d

51. Personal Endings. The personal endings of the preterit indicative of weak verbs are as follows:

Sing. 1 -e
2 -est
3 -e

Plur. 1, 2, 3 -on

The conjugation of the preterit indicative of *fremman* is therefore as follows:

Sing. 1 (iċ) **fremede**, *I made*

2 (ðū) **fremedest**, *thou madest*

3 (hē) **fremede**, *he made*

Plur. 1 (wē) **fremedon**, *we made*

2 (ġē) **fremedon**, *you made*

3 (hie) **fremedon**, *they made*

READING

52. Sē hlāford, þe on his earmum hringas hæfde, dælde tō his folce þæt gold fram ðām horde. þæt fȳr bærnde, ond þā sweord ond þā seax scinon þær hīe hēngon on þām wealle þæs hūses. Sē scop sang þæt lēoð, and þær wæs sē sang ond þæt ġiedd.

dælde, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **dælan**.

his, *his*, gen. of **hē**.

bærnde, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **bærnan**.

scinon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **scinan**.

hēngon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **hōn**.

sang, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **singan**.

wæs, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **wesan**.

CHAPTER IV

FEMININE $\bar{o}$ -DECLENSION

VERBAL ENDINGS

53. The feminine $\bar{o}$ -declension (also called the strong feminine declension) includes nearly all feminine nouns which end in a consonant or -u.

This declension includes "ō-stems," "jō-stems," and "wō-stems." For a systematic treatment of these see the Reference Grammar (317-319).

54. Paradigms of *sēo ġiefu*, the gift; *sēo lār*, the teaching; *sēo wund*, the wound; and *sēo sāwol*, the soul:

Sing.					Endings
Nom	sēo ġiefu	lār	wund	sāwol	-u, —
Gen.	ðære ġiefe	lære	wunde	sāwle	-e
Dat.	ðære ġiefe	lære	wunde	sāwle	-e
Acc.	ðā ġiefe	lære	wunde	sāwle	-e
Inst.	ðære ġiefe	lære	wunde	sāwle	-e
Plur.					
Nom., Acc.	ðā ġiefa, ġiefe	lāra, -e	wunda, -e	sāwla, -e	-a, -e
Gen.	ðāra ġiefa, ġiefena	lāra	wunda	sāwla	-a, -ena
Dat., Inst.	ðām (ðām) ġiefum	lārum	wundum	sāwlum	-um

Some feminine nouns, e.g., *tīd*, *time*, and *dād*, *deed*, have no ending in the Acc. Sing. These are "i-stems"; for further details in regard to them see the Reference Grammar (325). It will be observed that the inflected forms of *sāwol* lack the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the uninflected form; this variation is frequent, but not universal, in the declension of dissyllabic feminines ending in a consonant.

55. The case ending -u of the Nom. Sing. occurs only when, as in *ġiefu*, the stem is a short syllable (see 48). When, as in *lār* and *wund*, the stem is long, the Nom. Sing. is without ending.

56. Strong Verbs. Strong verbs form their preterit, not by means of a suffix, but by a particular kind of vowel change called ablaut. Thus, the preterit indicative first person singular of **singan** is **sang**; the preterit plural is **sungon**. The vowel changes that occur in some weak vowels (see 50) are not ablaut.

57. Principal Parts. The principal parts of a strong verb are: (1) the infinitive, (2) the preterit indicative first person singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, (4) the past participle. Following are the principal parts of **drifan**, *drive*; **bēodan**, *command*; **singan**, *sing*; **beran**, *bear*; **sprecan**, *speak*; **faran**, *go*; **lātan**, *let*; **feallan**, *fall*:

drifan	drāf	drifon	drifen
bēodan	bēad	budon	boden
singan	sang (song)	sungon	sungen
beran	bær	bæron	<u>boren</u>
sprecan	spræc	spræcon	sprecen
faran	fōr	fōron	faren
lātan	lēt	lēton	lāten
feallan	fēoll	fēollon	feallen

58. Personal Endings. The personal endings of the preterit indicative of strong verbs are as follows:

Sing. 1 —
2 -e
3 —

Plur 1, 2, 3 -on

The conjugation of the preterit indicative of **drifan** and **singan** is as follows:

Sing. 1 (iċ) drāf, *I drove*
2 (ðū) drife, *thou drovest*
3 (hē) drāf, *he drove*

Plur. 1 (wē) drifon, *we drove*
2 (gē) drifon, *you drove*
3 (hīe) drifon, *they drove*

Sing. 1 (iċ) sang (song), *I sang*
2 (ðū) sunge, *thou sangest*
3 (hē) sang (song), *he sang*

Plur. 1 (wē) sungon, *we sang*
2 (gē) sungon, *you sang*
3 (hīe) sungon, *they sang*

It is important to observe that the second person singular is formed from the stem of the preterit plural, not from that of the preterit singular.

READING

59. In þære healle wæs sēo bliss and sēo sǣlð. Nǣfre hæfdon hīe þā cære nē þā sorge. On þām bencum sǣton þā eorlas, ond sē drem þære dryhte wæs micel. Hira mēda ond hira sǣlða wæron monige. þā hīe hæfdon fela giefena, þā ēodon hīe tō hira hāmum.

cære, acc. sing. of **caru**.

sǣton, pret. ind. 3 person plural of **sittan**.

hira, *their*, gen. plur. of the third personal pronoun, **hē**.

monige, nom. plur. of **man** (**moni**).

ēodon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **gān**.

CHAPTER V

n-STEMS

bēon

60. The **n-stems** (also called "weak nouns") include (1) all masculine nouns ending in -a; (2) all feminine nouns ending in -e; (3) two neuter nouns, ēage, eye, and ēare, ear, ending in -e.

61. Paradigms of **hunta**, *hunter*, (masculine); **eorðe**, *earth* (feminine); **ēage**, *eye* (neuter):

Sing.				Endings		
Nom.	hunta	eorðe	ēage	-a	-e	-e
Gen.	huntan	eorðan	ēagan	-an	-an	-an
Dat.	huntan	eorðan	ēagan	-an	-an	-an
Acc.	huntan	eorðan	ēage	-an	-an	-e
Inst.	huntan	eorðan	ēagan	-an	-an	-an
Plur.						
Nom., Acc.	huntan	eorðan	ēagan	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	huntena	eorðena	ēagena	-ena	-ena	-ena
Dat., Inst.	huntum	eorðum	ēagum	-um	-um	-um

62. Complete paradigm of the definite article and demonstrative, **sē**, **sēo**, **ðæt**:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing. Nom.	sē	sēo	ðæt
Gen.	ðæs	ðære	ðæs
Dat.	ðæm, ðām	ðære	ðæm, ðām
Acc.	ðone	ðā	ðæt
Inst.	ðȳ, ðon, ðē	ðære	ðȳ, ðon, ðē
	All Genders		
Plur. Nom., Acc.	ðā		
Gen.	ðāra		
Dat., Inst.	ðæm, ðām		

63. The present indicative of **bēon**, *be*, is conjugated as follows:

Sing.	1	(ic) eom	(ic) bēo	<i>I am</i>
	2	(þū) eart	(þū) bist	<i>thou art</i>
	3	(hē) is	(hē) biþ	<i>he is</i>
Plur.	1	(wē) sinðon (sind, sint)	(wē) bēoþ	<i>we are</i>
	2	(ġē) sinðon (sind, sint)	(ġē) bēoþ	<i>you are</i>
	3	(hie) sinðon (sind, sint)	(hie) bēoþ	<i>they are</i>

64. The preterit indicative of **wesan**, *be*, is conjugated as follows:

Sing.	1	(ic) wæs	<i>I was</i>
	2	(þū) wære	<i>thou wast</i>
	3	(hē) wæs	<i>he was</i>
Plur.	1	(wē) wæron	<i>we were</i>
	2	(ġē) wæron	<i>you were</i>
	3	(hie) wæron	<i>they were</i>

This "composite" verb comprises forms of three separate verbs. To one belong **eom**, **eart**, **is**, **sinðon**; to a second belong **bēo**, **bist**, **biþ**, **bēoþ**; to a third belong the forms **wæs**, **wære**, **wæron**. No one of these verbs is conjugated fully in any Germanic language, but forms of each are combined so as to comprise one fully conjugated verb.

A distinction of meaning exists between the present indicative forms **eom**, **sinðon**, etc., and **bēo**, etc. The former are used to express present time, but the latter are usually future in meaning.

READING

65. þā sēo sunne ārās, þā cōmon þā bodan þæs cyninges, cweðende þæt þā scipflotan, þā Norþmenn, cōmon. þā guman

tō hira ecgum and hira gārūm fēngon. Hīe ġewiton tō þære hilde. Þær fuhton hīe onġēan þām fēðum ðāra flotena. Sēo byrne scān, ðæt sweord swong, sēo ecg bāt. Þær wæron moniġe bealde dæde on bām healfum.

cweðende, pres. participle of **cweðan**.

Norþmenn, nom. plur. of **Norþmann**.

moniġe, nom. plur. of **moniġ** (**maniġ**).

fuhton, pret. indic. 3 person plur. of **feohtan**.

CHAPTER VI

THIRD PERSONAL PRONOUN

VERBAL ENDINGS

66. The personal pronoun of the third person, **hē, hēo, hit**, *he, she, it*, is declined as follows:

Sing.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	hē	hēo <i>heo, he</i>	hit
Gen.	his	hie , hire	hit <i>his</i>
Dat.	him	hiere , hire	his <i>him</i>
Acc.	hine	hie , hi	him <i>hit</i>
	Plur.	All Genders	
	Nom., Acc.	hie , hi	
	Gen.	hiera , hira , heora	
	Dat.	him , heom	

67. **Personal Endings of Present Indicative.** The present indicative of strong verbs is conjugated by means of the following endings:

Sing. 1	-e	
2	-est	Plur. 1, 2, 3
3	-eþ	-aþ

These endings are added to the present stem of the verb, which we obtain by dropping from the infinitive form the infinitive ending, **-an**. The conjugation of the present indicative of **drifan** and **singan** is therefore as follows:

Sing. 1	(iċ) drife	(iċ) singe
2	(ðū) drifest	(ðū) singest
3	(hē) drifeþ	(hē) singeþ
Plur. 1	(wē) drifaþ	(wē) singaþ
2	(ġē) drifaþ	(ġē) singaþ
3	(hīe) drifaþ	(hīe) singaþ

These endings are also employed in the conjugation of weak verbs of the first class (see Chapter XVII). Weak verbs of the second class (see Chapter XX) have in the present indicative the following endings:

Sing. 1	-ie	
2	-ast	Plur. 1, 2, 3
3	-aþ	-iaþ

The conjugation of the present indicative of **dēman**, *judge*, and **lufian**, *love*, weak verbs respectively of the first and second classes, is as follows:

Sing. 1	(īc) dēme	(īc) lufie .
2	(ðū) dēmest	(ðū) lufast
3	(hē) dēmeþ	(hē) lufaþ .
Plur. 1	(wē) dēmaþ	(wē) lufiaþ
2	(ġē) dēmaþ	(ġē) lufiaþ
3	(hīe) dēmaþ	(hīe) lufiaþ

READING

Matthew 13:24-30

68. Heofona riċe iſ ġeworden þām menn ġeliċ þe sēow gōd sǣd on his æcere. Sōþlice þā þā menn slēpon, þā cōm his fēonda sum and ofersēow hit mid coccele on middum þām hwæte and fērde þanon. Sōþlice þā sēo wyrt wēox ond þone wæstm brōhte, þā ætiewde sē coccel hine. Þā ēodon þæs hlāfordes þēowas ond cwædon, “Hlāford, hū ne sēowe þū gōd sǣd on þīnum æcere? Hwanon hæfde hē coccel?” Þā cwæþ hē, “þæt dyde unhold monn.” Þā cwædon þā þēowas, “Wilt þū wē gāð and gaderiað hīe?” Þā cwæð hē, “Nese, þē læs ġē þone hwæte āwurtwalien þonne ġē þone coccel gaderiaþ. Lætað æġþer weaxan oð riptīman; ond on þām riptīman ic secge þām rīperum, ‘Gaderiaþ ærest þone coccel, ond bindaþ scēafmælum tō forbærnenne; ond gaderiaþ ðone hwæte intō mīnum berne.’ ”

is ġeworden ġeliċ, *is likened*.

menn, dat. sing. of **mann**; see 167.

hine, the personal pronoun used reflexively.

sēowe, pret. ind. 2 person sing. of **sāwan**.

þinum, masc. dat. sing. of **þin**.

wilt, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **willan**.

gāð, pres. ind. 1 person plur. of **gān**; here, as frequently in OE, the present tense is used with future meaning.

gaderiað, pres. ind. 1 person plur. of **gaderian**, used with future meaning.

āwurtwalien, pres. subj. 2 person plur. of **āwurtwalian**.

lætað, imperative 2 person plur. of **lætan**; the imp. 2 person plur. of both strong and weak verbs is always identical in form with the pres. ind. 2 person plural.

secge, pres. ind. 1 person sing. of **secgan**, used with future meaning.

baderiaþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **gaderian**.

gindaþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **bindan**.

tō forbærnenne, *to burn up*, gerund of **forbærnan**, used to express purpose.

CHAPTER VII

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

69. In Old English, as in all other Germanic languages, there are two declensions of the adjective, the strong and the weak.

70. Paradigm of the strong declension of the short-stemmed adjective **sum**, *some*:

Sing.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Endings		
Nom.	sum	sumu	sum	—	-u	—
Gen.	sumes	sumre	sumes	-es	-re	-es
Dat.	sumum	sumre	sumum	-um	-re	-um
Acc.	sumne	sume	sum	-ne	-e	—
Inst.	sume	sumre	sume	-e	-re	-e
Plur.						
Nom., Acc.	sume	suma, sume	sumu	e	-a, -e	-u
Gen.	sumra	sumra	sumra	-ra	-ra	-ra
Dat., Inst.	sumum	sumum	sumum	-um	-um	-um

71. Paradigm of the strong declension of the long-stemmed adjective **gōd**, *good*:

Sing.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Endings		
Nom.	gōd	gōd	gōd	—	—	—
Gen.	gōdes	gōdre	gōdes	-es	-re	-es
Dat.	gōdum	gōdre	gōdum	-um	-re	-um
Acc.	gōdne	gōde	gōd	-ne	-e	—
Inst.	gōde	gōdre	gōde	-e	-re	-e
Plur.						
Nom., Acc.	gōde	gōda, gōde	gōd, gōde	-e	-a, -e	—, -e
Gen.	gōdra	gōdra	gōdra	-ra	-ra	-ra
Dat., Inst.	gōdum	gōdum	gōdum	-um	-um	-um

72. It will be observed that most of the endings are the same as those of the masculine and neuter **a**-declension and feminine **ō**-declension nouns. The endings printed in italics however, belong to the pronoun declension; thus,

- sum-um**, Masc. Neut. Dat. Sing., ends in **-m** like *ðām* and *him*;
sum-ne, Masc. Acc. Sing., has the same ending as *ðone* and *hine*;
sum-re, Fem. Gen. Dat. Sing., has the same ending as *ðære* and *hiere*;
sum-e, Masc. Nom. Acc. Plur., ends in a vowel like *ðā* and *hie*, not in *-as* like *stānas*;
sum-ra, Gen. Plur., has the same ending as *ðāra* and *hiera*.

73. The declension of the short-stemmed adjectives and of the long-stemmed adjectives is identical except in two forms. In the Fem. Nom. Sing. and the Neut. Nom. Acc. Plur. the short-stemmed adjective has the ending **-u**. The long-stemmed adjective, on the other hand, has no ending in the Fem. Nom. Sing., and often has none in the Neut. Nom. Acc. Plur. This difference is precisely parallel to that between **limu** and **word**, **ġiefu** and **lār**; see 48 and 55.

74. **Dissyllabic Adjectives.** Adjectives ending in **-e**, like **grēne**, *green*, are declined like **sum** except that they have the ending **-e** wherever **sum** is without ending (see Reference Grammar 357). The inflected forms of dissyllabic adjectives ending in a consonant frequently lack the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the uninflected form; e.g., **hālīg**; *holy*, Gen. Sing. **hālġes**. Dissyllabic adjectives ending in a consonant sometimes have and sometimes do not have the ending **-u** in the Fem. Nom. Sing. and Neut. Nom. Acc. Plur.

75. **Weak Declension.** Paradigm of the weak declension of the adjective **ġōd**, *good*:

Sing.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Endings		
Nom.	ġōda	ġōde	ġōde	-a	-e	-e
Gen.	ġōdan	ġōdan	ġōdan	-an	-an	-an

hunta - corſte - eage -

Dat.	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōdan</i>	-an	-an	-an
Acc.	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōde</i>	-an	-an	-e
Inst.	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōdan</i>	<i>gōdan</i>	-an	-an	-an
	Plur.	All Genders				
	Nom., Acc.	<i>gōdan</i>		-an		
	Gen.	<i>gōdena, gōdra</i>		-ena, -ra		
	Dat., Inst.	<i>gōdum</i>		-um		

76. It will be observed that the endings of the weak adjective declension are identical with those of the weak noun declension except in the Gen. Plur., where the ending **-ra**, borrowed by analogy from the strong declension, is an alternative to the weak ending **-ena**.

77. The strong declension of the adjective is used in prose except under conditions that require the use of the weak declension. The weak declension is used: (1) when the adjective is preceded by the definite article (*sē*) or the demonstrative *ðēs, this*; (2) when it is preceded by a possessive pronoun; (3) when it modifies a noun used in direct address; (4) regularly in the comparative degree; (5) frequently in the superlative degree; (6) often in poetry where the strong declension would be used in prose.

READING

Luke 15:11-19

78. Sōðlice sum monn hæfde twēgen suna. þā cwæð sē ġingra tō his fæder, "Fæder, sele mē mīnne dæl mīnre æhte þe mē tō ġebyrþ." þā dælde hē him his æhta. Ðā æfter fēawum dagum eall his þing ġegaderode sē ġingra sunu ond fērde wræclīce on feorlen riçe ond forspilde þær his æhta, libbende on his gælsan.

Ðā hē hīe hæfde ealle āmierrede, þā wearð miċel hungor on þām riċe and hē wearð wādla. þā fērde hē and folgode ānum burhsittendum menn þæs riċes; ðā sende hē hine tō his tūne þæt hē hēolde his swīn. Ðā ġewilnode hē his wambe ġefyllan of þām bēancoddum þe ðā swīn æton, and him mon ne sealde.

þā beþōhte hē hine ond cwæð, "Ēalā, hū fela hýrlinga on mīnes fæder hūse hlāf ġenōhne habbað, ond ic hēr on hungre forweorðe! Ic ārise ond ic fare tō mīnum fæder and ic secge him, 'Ēalā fæder, ic syngode on heofonas and beforan þē; nū ic ne eom wierðe þæt ic bēo þīn sunu nemned; dō mē swā ānne of þīnum hýrlingum.' "

suna, acc. plur. of **sunu** (see 164).

ġingra, comparative of **ġeong**.

fæder, gen. and dat. sing. of **fæder** (see 171).

sele, imp. 2 person sing. of **sellan**.

mē, dat. sing. of **ic**.

ġebyreþ, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **ġebyrian**.

libbende, pres. participle of **lġbban**.

āmierrede, past participle of **āmierran**, inflected like a strong adjective.

folgode, note that this verb is followed by the **dat.**, not the acc.

burhsittendum, adjective having the form of a present participle

menn, dat. sing. of **mann** (see 167).

hēolde, pret. subj. 3 person sing. of **healdan**.

sealde, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **sellan**.

beþōhte, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of **beþencan**.

habbað, pres. ind. 3 person plur. of **habban**.

þē, *thee*, dat. sing. of **þū**.

bēo, pres. subj. 1 person sing. of **bēon**.

dō, imp. 2 person sing. of **dōn**.

CHAPTER VIII

CHANGE OF **a** TO **æ** AND **o**; **ðēs**

79. For the adequate understanding of many phenomena in Old English, especially of apparent "irregularities" in the inflection of the strong verbs, it is necessary for the student to become acquainted with a number of sound changes which occurred in the Prehistoric periods of the language. Altho for the explanation of these sound changes it is necessary for us to reconstruct words and forms as they must have existed centuries before Old English was written down, we may do so with confidence on the basis of a comparison of Old English with Gothic, Old Norse, Old Saxon, and Old High German, which often preserved without change sounds that were modified or lost in Old English.²⁴

80. **Change of a to æ.** One of the earliest Old English sound changes was that of **a** to **æ**. **a** remained **a** only when it was followed by **w** or a ^{nasal}, or when it occurred before a single consonant followed by **a**, **o**, or **u**.²⁵ Elsewhere **a** became **æ**. Thus Prehistoric OE ***dag** (cf. Gothic **dags**, Old Norse **dagr**, Old Saxon **dag**, Old High German **tag**) became **dæg**. But ***dagas** remained **dagas**, because the **a** was followed by a single consonant plus **a**. Likewise ***daga** remained **daga**, and ***dagum** remained **dagum**.

²⁴ See Introduction, Old English and its Related Languages.

²⁵ **a** always became **æ** before single **h**, however, even if the **h** was followed by **a**, **o**, or **u**.

Further examples are as follows:

*sat	became sæt	*faran	remained faran
*fast	“ fæst	*nacod	“ nacod
*acr	“ æcer	*sadol	“ sadol
*craft	“ cræft	*hradum	“ hradum
*dages	“ dægēs	*hwatu	“ hwatu
*hwaðer	“ hwæðer	*clawe	“ clawe

81. **Change of a to o.** When **a** was followed by nasal (**m** or **n**) it did not become **æ**, but either remained **a** or was changed to **o**.²⁶ In the EWS MSS **o** is decidedly more common before nasals than **a**; in the LWS MSS **a** is almost universal. Thus Prehistoric OE ***handu** (cf. Gothic **handus**, Old Saxon **hand**, Old High German **hant**) became EWS **hond**, LWS **hand**; Prehistoric OE ***mann** (cf. Gothic **manna**, Old Saxon, Old High German **man**) became EWS **monn**, LWS **mann**.

82. **Exercise.** Convert the following Prehistoric Old English forms into the forms that would occur in the language of the year 900: ***ðanc**, ***fastum**, ***þat**, ***lamb**, ***after**, ***standan**, ***glad**, ***baþu**, ***and**, ***cradol**, ***fader**, ***swamm**, ***calan**, ***lang**, ***camp**, ***sacu**, ***hafoc**, ***anda**, ***faþm**.

83. The demonstrative **þēs**, **þēos**, **þis**, *this*, is declined as follows:

Sing.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	þēs	þēos	þis
Gen.	þisses, þises	þisse	þisses, þises
Dat.	þissum, þisum	þisse	þissum, þisum
Acc.	þisne	þās	þis
Inst.	þȳs	þisse	þȳs
Plur.	All Genders		
	Nom., Acc.	þās	
	Gen.	þissa	
	Dat., Inst.	þissum, þisum	

²⁶ **o** which developed out of **a** followed by a nasal is often printed as **q** by editors of OE texts, but the character **q** does not occur in the MSS.

READING

Luke 15:20-32

84. Ond hē ārās þā ond cōm tō his fæder. And þā giet þā hē wæs feorr his fæder, hē hine ġeseah ond wearð mid mildheortnesse āstyred and onġēan hine arn ond hine beclypte ond cyste hine. Ðā cwæð his sunu, “Fæder, ic syngode on heofon ond beforan ðē; nū ic ne eom wierþe þæt ic þīn sunu bēo ġenemned.” Ðā cwæþ sē fæder tō his þēowum, “Bringað hræðe þone sēlestan ġēġierelan and scrȳdað hine, ond sellað him hring on his hand and ġescȳ tō his fōtum; ond bringað ān fætt stierc and ofslēað, ond uton etan and ġewistfullian; for þām þēs mīn sunu wæs dēad, ond hē ġeedcwicode; hē forwearð, ond hē is ġemētt.” Ðā ongunnon hīe ġewistlæcan.

Sōðlice his ieldra sunu wæs on æcere; ond hē cōm, and þā hē þām hūse ġenēalæhte, hē ġehierde þone swēġ ond þæt werod. Þā clipode hē ānne þēow ond āscode hine hwæt þæt wære. Ðā cwæð hē, “þīn brōðor cōm; and þīn fæder ofslōh ān fætt cēalf, for þām þe hē hine hālne onfēng.”

Ðā bealg hē hine ond nolde in gān. þā ēode his fæder ūt ond ongann hine biddan. Ðā cwæþ hē his fæder andswariende, “Efne swā fela ġēara ic þe þēowode, ond ic næfre þīn bebod ne forġiemde; and ne sealdest þū mē næfre ān ticcen þæt ic mid mīnum frēondum ġewistfullode; ac siððan þēs þīn sunu cōm þe his spēde mid miltestrum āmierde. þū ofslōge him fætt cēalf.” Ðā cwæþ hē, “Sunu, þū eart simle mid mē, ond ealle mīne þing sint þīne; þē ġebyrede ġewistfullian ond ġeblissian, for þām þēs þīn brōðor wæs dēad, ond hē ġeedcwicode; hē forwearð, and hē is ġemētt.”

fæder, dat. sing. of fæder.

ġeseah, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of ġesēon.

arn, pret. ind. 3 person sing. of irnan.

bringað, imp. 2 person plur. of bringan.

scrȳdaþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **scrȳdan**.

sellaþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **sellan**.

ofslēaþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **ofslēan**.

uton, *let us*, used with the infinitive.

ieldra, comparative of **eald**.

wære, pret. subj. 3 person singular of **wesan**.

andswariende, pres. participle of **andswarian** (**ondswarian**).

sealdest, pret. ind. 2 person sing. of **sellan**.

ġewistfullode, pret. subj. 1 person sing. of **ġewistfullian**.

ofslōge, pret. ind. 2 person sing. of **ofslēan**.

CHAPTER IX

BREAKING; **iċ** AND **þū**

85. Breaking. At an early period of Prehistoric Old English, (but subsequent to the change of **a** to **æ**), the vowels **æ**, **e**, and **i**, when followed by certain consonants or consonant combinations, underwent a sound change called breaking which converted them into diphthongs.

Before: **r** plus a consonant

l plus a consonant

h

(1) **æ** (from older **a**) became **ea**

(2) **e** " **eo**

(3) **i** " **io**²⁷

e, and **i**, however, were broken before **l** only when the consonant following **l** was **h**; otherwise the **e** and **i** remained unchanged, as in **helpan**, **ċild**.

For example:

(1) ***wærþ** became **wearþ**

***hælp** " **healp**

***fæht** " **feaht**

***sæh** " **seah**

***slæhan** " ***sleahan**

(2) ***werpan** became **weorpan**

***selh** " **seolh**

***fehtan** " **feohtan**

***feh** " **feoh**

***sehan** " ***seohan**

(3) ***wirþiþ** became ***wiorþiþ**

***fiþhiþ** " ***fiolhiþ**

***sihiþ** " ***siohiþ**²⁸

²⁷ The **h** which caused breaking was a back consonant; the **r** and **l** were not the ordinary **r** and **l** but were pronounced with the tip of the tongue turned upwards and backwards ("inverted" **r** and **l**). The nature of these consonants was such that there developed between them and a preceding **æ**, **e**, or **i** an intermediate vowel or "glide" which in the ninth century was written **a** or **o** but which originally had the quality of **u**.

²⁸ The vowel **i** also was broken to **io** (which later became **ēo**) before **h**; e.g., ***tīhan** became ***tīohan** and ***tīh** became **tīoh**. Likewise **æ** broke to **ēa** before **h**: ***næh** became **nēah**.

86. **Exercise.** Convert the following Prehistoric Old English forms into the forms that would occur in the language of the year 900: *herte, *ġefæh, *hælf, *elh, *stærf, *seh, *mæhte, hæld, *erðe, *mælt, *wæhsan, *fællan, *ærm, *bergan, *æhta.

87. **Personal Pronouns.** The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **īc** and **þū**, are declined in three numbers, singular, dual, and plural. The dual number is used only when the pronoun refers specifically to **two** persons; **wit** and **ġit** mean *we two, ye two*; **unc**, **inc** mean *us two, you two*.

88. Declension of **īc**, *I*; **þū**, *thou*:

Sing.

Nom.	īc	þū
Gen.	mīn	þīn
Dat.	mē	þē
Acc.	mec, mē	þec, þē

Dual

Nom.	wit	ġit
Gen.	uncer	incer
Dat.	unc	inc
Acc.	uncit, unc	incit, inc

Plur.

Nom.	wē	ġē
Gen.	ūre	ēower
Dat.	ūs	ēow
Acc.	ūsic, ūs	ēowic, ēow

89. **Possessive Pronouns.** The possessive pronouns **mīn**, *mine*; **þīn**, *thine*; **sīn**, *his, her, its, their*; **uncer**, *of us two*; **incer**, *of you two*; **ūre**, *our*; and **ēower**, *your*, are declined like strong adjectives (see Chapter VII). The genitives of the third personal pronoun, **his**, **hiere**, and **hiera**, are also used to indicate possession, but are not declined as adjectives.

READING

Matthew 25:1-12

90. þonne biþ heofona rīce ġelic þām tien fæmnum þe ða lēohtfatu nāmon ond fērdon onġean þone brȳdguman ond þa brȳde. Hira fif wæron dysige and fif glēawe. Ac þa fi

dysigan nāmon lēohtfatu ond ne nāmon nānne ele mid him;
 ðā glēawan nāmon ele on hira fatum mid bām lēohtfatum.

Ðā sē brýdguma ^{deleged} ielde, þā hnappodon hīe ealle and slēpon. ^{could not}
 Witodlice tō middre nihte man hriemde ond cwæþ, "Nū sē
 brýdguma cymð; farað him tōgēanes." þā ārison ealle þā
 fāmnan ond glengdon heora lēohtfatu. ^{brave men}

Ðā cwædon þā dysigan tō þām wīsum, "Sellaþ ūs of ēowerum
 ele, for þām ūru lēohtfatu sint ācwencte." Ðā ondswarodon
 þā glēawan and cwædon, "Nese, þē læs þe wē and gē næbben
 genōh; gāþ tō þām cīependum, ond bycgað ēow ele." ^{may}

Witodlice þā hīe fērdon and woldon bycgan, þā cōm sē
 brýdguma, ond þā ðe gearwe wæron ēodon in mid him tō
 þām giftum, ond sēo duru wæs belocen.

Ðā æt nīehstan cōmon þā oðre fāmnan and cwædon,
 "Dryhten, Dryhten, læt ūs in." Ðā andswarode hē heom
 ond cwæð, "Sōþ ic ēow secge, ne cann ic ēow." ^{Thane}

namon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **nīman**.

cymð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **cuman**.

ācwencte, inflected form of past participle of **ācwenčan**.

næbben, pres. subj. 2 person plur. of **habban**, contracted with the negative
 particle **ne**.

gāþ, imp. 2 person plur. of **gān**.

gearwe; for the inflection of this adjective see 358.

oðre; **oðer** is always inflected according to the strong declension.

læt, imp. 2 person sing. of **lētan**.

cann, pres. ind. 1 person sing. of **cunnan**.

CHAPTER X

DIPHTHONGISATION BY INITIAL PALATALS; **hwā, hwæt**

91. Influence of Initial Palatal Consonants. At a period of Prehistoric Old English which was later than the period of breaking, the vowels **æ**, **ǣ**, and **e**, when preceded by the initial palatals **ċ**,²⁹ **ġ**,³⁰ or **sc**, underwent a sound change which converted them into diphthongs.

- (1) **æ** became **ea**
- (2) **ǣ** " **ēa**
- (3) **e** " **ie** (LWS **i** or **y**)³¹

For example:

- (1) ***ċæf** became **ċeaf** (2) ***cǣce** became **cēace**
***ġæf** " **ġeaf** ***ġær** " **ġear**
***scæl** " **sceal** ***scāp** " **scēap**
- (3) ***ġefan** became **ġiefan**
***sceran** " **scieran**

92. Exercise. Convert the following Prehistoric Old English forms into the forms that would occur in the language of the year 900: ***cæster**, ***ġǣfon**, ***sceld**, ***forġetan**, ***scær**, ***ġǣton**, ***ġæt**, ***ġeldan**, ***scæft**, ***ġærd**, ***scāron**.

²⁹ See 27, 28.

³⁰ See 24, 25.

³¹ Between the initial palatal consonant and the vowel there developed an intermediate vowel or "glide" which united with the vowel to form a diphthong. This diphthong was originally accented on its second element, but subsequently the accent was shifted from the second element to the first. Thus ***ġefan** first became **ġiefan**, with the accent on the second element of the diphthong; then, with the shifting of the accent, **ġiefan** became **ġiefan**.

93. Declension of hwā, hwæt. The interrogative and indefinite pronoun hwā (who? someone), hwæt (what? something) has forms only for the masculine and neuter singular. It is declined like sē, ðæt:

Sing.	Masculine	Neuter
Nom.	hwā	hwæt
Gen.	hwæs	hwæs
Dat.	hwāem, hwām	hwāem, hwām
Acc.	hwone	hwæt
Inst.	hwȳ, hwon	hwȳ, hwon

READING

Luke 16:19-31

94. Sum welig mann wæs, ond hē wæs gescrȳdd mid purpuran ond mid twine and dæghwāmlīce rīcelīce gewistfullode. Ond sum wādla wæs, on naman Lazarus, sē læg on his dura, swīðe forwundod, and wilnode þæt hē hine of his crumum gefylde þe of his beode feollon; ond him nān monn ne sealde, ac hundas cōmon and his wunda liccodon.

Ðā wæs geworden þæt sē wādla forðfærde, ond hine englas bāron on Abrahames grēadan; þā wearð sē weliga dēad and wæs on helle bebyrged. Ðā āhōf hē his ēagan ūp, þā hē on þām tintregum wæs, ond geseah feorran Abraham, ond Lazarum on his grēadan. Ðā hriemde hē and cwæð, "Ēalā fæder Abraham, gemiltsa mē, ond send Lazarum þæt hē dyppe his fingres lip on wætere ond mīne tungan gecēle; for þām þe ic eom on þissum liēge cwielmed."

Ðā cwæð Abraham, "Ēalā sunu, gēpen þæt þū gōd onfenge on þīnum life, ond gelīce Lazarus onfeng yfel; nū is þēs gefrēfred, ond þū eart cwielmed. And on eallum þissum, betweox ūs ond ēow is miel dwolma getrymed; þā ðe willað heonan tō ēow faran ne magon, nē þanon faran hider."

Ðā cwæð hē, "Fæder, ic bidde þē þæt ðū sende hine tō mīnes fæder huse; ic hæbbe fīf gebrōþru; þæt hē cȳðe him

gemiltsa
gemiltsa þ
gemiltsood?

āletten, ālēf, ālēfon, ālēfen

collective
prayer

þæt hīe ne cumen on þissa tintrega stōwe." þā sægde Abraham him, "Hīe habbað Moysen and witegan; hīe hlysten him." Ðā cwæð hē, "Nese, fæder Abraham, ac hīe dōð dædbōte gif hwelc of dēaðe tō him færð." Ðā cwæð hē, "Gif hīe ne gehieraþ Moysen ond þā witegan, nē hīe ne gēliefað þeah hwelc of dēaðe ārīse."

dura, dat. sing. of **duru** (see 164).

ġefylde, pret. subj. 3 person sing. of **ġefyllan**.

wæs ġeworden, *happened*; see **ġeweorðan**.

ġemiltsa, imp. 2 person sing. of **ġemiltsian**.

send, imp. 2 person sing. of **sendan**.

dype, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **dyppan**.

ġecēle, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **ġecēlan**.

ġeþenc, imp. 2 person sing. of **ġeþencan**.

onfēnge, pret. ind. 2 person sing. of **onfōn**.

magon, pres. ind. 3 person plur. of **magan**.

sende, pres. subj. 2 person sing. of **sendan**.

hæbbe, pres. ind. 1 person sing. of **habban**.

cȳðe, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **cȳðan**.

cumen, pres. subj. 3 person plur. of **cuman**.

hlysten, pres. subj. 3 person plur. of **hlystan**.

dōð, pres. ind. 3 person plur. of **dōn**.

færð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **faran**.

ārīse, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **ārīsan**.

CHAPTER XI

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES I AND II

95. **Strong Verbs.** Strong verbs form their preterit and past participle by means of a change in the vowel of the stem. This change is called **ablaut** (or **gradation**) and these verbs are frequently called **ablaut verbs**. In Old English, as in the other old Germanic languages, there are seven classes of strong verbs (frequently called **ablaut series**), each class being characterised by a distinct series of ablaut changes.

96. **Class I.** The OE ablaut of Class I is:

- i** (infinitive and present)
- ā** (preterit indicative 1 and 3 singular)
- i** (preterit indicative plural)
- i** (past participle)

The principal parts (see 57) of representative verbs of this class are as follows:

bīdan , <i>await</i>	bād	bidon	biden
bītan , <i>bite</i>	bāt	biton	biten
glīdan , <i>glide</i>	glād	glidon	gliden
ridan , <i>ride</i>	rād	ridon	riden
rīsan , <i>rise</i>	rās	risen	risen
ƿsnīðan , <i>cut</i>	snāð	snidon	sniden ³²
writan , <i>write</i>	wrāt	writon	writen

³² The interchange between **ð** in the present and preterit singular and **d** in the preterit plural and past participle which occurs in this verb is called **grammatical change according to Verner's law**. In its origin it was a Primitive Gmc change, under certain conditions, of the voiceless spirants (see 2, 3) **th** (as in *thin*), **s** (as in *soon*), and **h** (as in OE *seah*) into the corresponding voiced spirants **th** (as in *then*) **z**, and **g** (as in OE *dagas*). The correspondence between these voiceless and voiced sounds is obscured, however, in OE by the fact

97. **Class II.** The OE ablaut of Class II is: **ēo** (ū); **ēa**; **u**; **o**. The principal parts of representative verbs are as follows:

(a) bēodan , <i>command</i>	bēad	budon	boden
clēofan , <i>cleave</i>	clēaf	clufon	clofen
drēogan , <i>endure</i>	drēag	drugon	drogen
flēogan , <i>fly</i>	flēag	flugon	flogen
(b) brūcan , <i>enjoy</i>	brēac	brucon	brocen
būgan , <i>bow</i>	bēag	bugon	bogen
(c) ċēosan , <i>choose</i>	ċēas	curon	coren ³³
frēosan , <i>freeze</i>	frēas	fruron	froren ³³

98. The full conjugation of the strong verb, exemplified by **bīdan** and **bēodan**, is as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present Sing. 1	bīde	bēode
2	bītst , ³⁴ bīdest	bīetst , ³⁴ bēodest
3	bītt , ³⁴ bīdeþ	bīett , ³⁴ bēodeþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3	bīdaþ	bēodaþ
Preterit Sing. 1	bād	bēad
2	bide	bude
3	bād	bēad
Plur. 1, 2, 3	bidon	budon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	bīde	bēode
Plur. 1, 2, 3	bīden	bēoden
Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	bide	bude
Plur. 1, 2, 3	biden	buden

that in West Germanic the voiced **th** and **z** were changed respectively to **d** and **r**. In OE, therefore, the actual interchange is between **þ** and **d**, **s** and **r**, **h** and **g**. In OE of the year 900 the **þ** or **s** was a voiced sound when it occurred between vowels, as in **snīþan** and **rīsan**; it was a voiceless sound when it was final, as in **snāð** and **rās**. For a fuller account of Verner's law see 207-210.

³³ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and see the preceding note.

³⁴ For an explanation of these syncopated forms (as they are called) see Chapter XVI.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES I AND II

	IMPERATIVE	
Present Sing. 2	bīd	bēod
Plur. 2	bīdaþ	bēodaþ
Infinitive	bīdan	bēodan
Gerund	tō bīdenne	tō bēodenne
Present Participle	bīdende	bēodende
Past Participle	bīden	boden

99. With regard to the conjugation of the strong verbs it should be observed:

(1) That the present indicative, present subjunctive, imperative, infinitive, gerund, and present participle are formed from the present stem of the verb;

(2) That the preterit indicative 2 singular, preterit indicative plural, and preterit subjunctive are formed from the preterit plural stem of the verb;

(3) That the endings of the subjunctive, both present and preterit, are **-e** in the singular and **-en** in the plural.

READING

Luke 10:30-35

100. Sum mann fērde fram Hierusalem tō Hiericho ond becōm on þā scaðan, þā hine berēafodon and tintregodon hine ond forlēton hine sām cwicne. þā gebyrede hit þæt sum sacerd fērde on þām ilcan wege; and þā hē þæt geseah, hē hine forbēag. Ond eall swā sē diacon, þā hē wæs wið þā stowe ond þæt geseah, hē hine ēac forbēag. Ðā fērde sum Samaritanisc monn wið hine; þā hē hine geseah, þā wearð hē mid mildheortnesse ofer hine āstyred. þā genēalæhte hē ond wrāð his wunda ond on āgeat ele and win ond hine on his niēten sette and gelædde on his læcehūs and hine lācnode; ond brōhte oðrum dæge twegen peningas and sealde þām læce ond þus cwæð: "Be giem his; ond swā hwæt swā þu mære tō gedēst, þonne ic cume, ic hit forgielde þe." oðrum dæge, the next day.

be giem, imp. 2 person sing. of be gieman, used with gen. of object.
gedēst, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of gedōn.

17 wicdan wrot wiston wisten
18 ageton ageat ageton ageter
21 hospital
22 laenian w. II laenode laenan
23 bringan brokhte broht w. I
24 physisian
25 gedon gedye
26 sellan seald seald w. I
27 geseah
28 geseah
29 geseah
30 geseah

CHAPTER XII

STRONG VERBS: CLASS III

101. Strong verbs of Class III have stems ending in two consonants, of which the first is nearly always a liquid (l or r) or a nasal (m or n). They fall into four subclasses:

- (1) Verbs with stems ending in a nasal plus a consonant:

bindan , <i>bind</i>	band (bond)	bundon	bunden
drincan , <i>drink</i>	dranc (drone)	druncon	druncen

- (2) Verbs with stems ending in l plus a consonant:

helpan , <i>help</i>	healp	hulpon	holpen
meltan , <i>melt</i>	mealt	multon	molten
ġieldan , <i>yield</i>	ġeald	guldon	golden
ġiellan , <i>yell</i>	ġeall	gullon	gollen

- (3) Verbs with stems ending in r or h plus a consonant:

weorpan , <i>throw</i>	wearp	wurpon	worpen
weorþan , <i>become</i>	wearþ	wurdon	worden ³⁵
feohtan , <i>fight</i>	feaht	fuhton	fohten

- (4) Verbs with stems ending in two consonants, of which neither is a liquid or nasal: (*drucan* etc.)

breġdan , <i>brandish</i>	bræġd	brugdon	brogden
----------------------------------	--------------	----------------	----------------

102. In Primitive Germanic all of these verbs had originally the same ablaut: e in the infinitive and present, a in the preterit singular, u in the preterit plural, and u in the past participle. The regularity of this ablaut was subsequently broken up, however, by sound changes, some of which took place in Ger-

³⁵ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above

manic itself and some in Old English. An understanding of these sound changes enables one to bring order out of the apparent irregularity of the Old English forms.

bindan and **drincan** were Primitive Gmc ***bendanan** and ***drencanan**, but Primitive Gmc **e** followed by a nasal plus another consonant or by a double nasal became **i**. **ġieldan** and **ġiellan** were Prehistoric OE ***ġeldan** and ***ġellan**, but **e** was diphthongised to **ie** in Prehistoric OE because it was preceded by the initial palatal **ġ** (see 91).

weorpan, **weorþan**, and **feohtan** were Prehistoric OE ***werpan**, ***werþan**, and ***fehtan**, but **e** followed by **r** plus a consonant or by **h** was broken to **eo** (see 85).

bond, **dronc**, **ġeald**, **ġeall**, **healp**, **mealt**, **wearp**, **wearþ**, **feaht**, and **bræġd** were Prehistoric OE ***band**, ***dranc**, ***gald**, ***gall**, ***halp**, ***malt**, ***warp**, ***warþ**, ***faht**, and ***bragd**. But

- (1) In ***band** and ***dranc** the original **a** became **o** before the nasal **n**, giving EWS **bond**, **dronc**, LWS **band**, **dranc** (see 81).
- (2) In ***gald**, ***gall**, ***halp**, ***malt**, ***warp**, ***warþ**, and ***faht** the original **a** became **æ** (see 80), which was then broken to **ea** (see 85).
- (3) In ***bragd** the original **a** became **æ** and then remained unchanged, no cause of breaking being present.

bunden, **druncen**, **gollen**, **holpen**, etc., were Primitive Gmc ***bundanaz**, ***druncanaz**, ***gullanaz**, ***hulpanaz**, etc. But when the following syllable contained the vowel **a**, Primitive Gmc **u** always changed to **o**, unless, as in ***bundanaz** and ***druncanaz**, the **u** was followed by a nasal plus a consonant. The original **u**, therefore, remains in **bunden** and **druncen**, but has been changed to **o** in **gollen**, **holpen**, etc.

103. Exercise. Construct the principal parts of the following strong verbs: **finðan**, **swellan**, **sweltan**, **beorgan**, **hweorfan**, **stregðan**.

READING

Mark 12:1-9

104. Sum monn him plantode wīngeard and betȳnde hine ond dealf āne sēað ond ġetimbode āne stīepel ond ġesette hine mid eorðtilium and fērde on elþeodīgnesse.

þā sende hē tō þām tilium his þēow on tīde þæt hē þæs wīngeardes wæstm onfēnge. Ðā swungon hīe þone ond forlēton hine īdelhendne. And eft hē him sende oðerne þēow, and hīe þone on hēafde ġewundodon ond mid tēonum ġeswencton. Ond eft hē him sumne sende, ond hīe þone ofslōgon.

þā hæfde hē þā ġīet āne lēofostne sunu; þā sende hē æt nīehstan him þone ond cwæð, "Witodlice mīnne sunu hīe forwandiað." Ðā cwædon þā tilian īmbetwēonum, "Hēr is sē ierfenuma; uton ofslēan hine, þonne bið ūru sēo ierfeweardness." Hīe þā ofslōgon hine and wurpon wiðūtan þone wīngeard.

Hwæt dēð þæs wīngeardes hlāford? Hē cymð ond fordēð þā tilian and seleð oþrum þone wīngeard.

onfēnge, pret. subj. 3 person sing. of **onfōn**.

lēofostne, masc. acc. sing. of **lēofost**, superlative of **lēof**.

dēð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **dōn**.

cymð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **cuman**.

seleð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **sellan**.

CHAPTER XIII

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES IV AND V

105. Strong verbs of Class IV have stems ending in a single consonant, nearly always a liquid (**l** or **r**) or a nasal. The Old English ablaut is: **e**, **æ**, **ǣ**, **o**.³⁶ Representative verbs are:

beran , <i>bear</i>	bær	bǣron	børen
cwelan , <i>die</i>	cwæl	cwǣlon	cwolen
helan , <i>conceal</i>	hæl	hǣlon	holen
stelan , <i>steal</i>	stæl	stǣlon	stolen
teran , <i>tear</i>	tær	tǣron	toren

In one verb:

brecan , <i>break</i>	bræc	brǣcon	brocen
------------------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------

the stem ends in a consonant which is neither a liquid nor a nasal. In one verb:

scieran , <i>shear</i>	scear	scēaron	scoren
-------------------------------	--------------	----------------	---------------

the **e** of the infinitive, the **æ** of the preterit indicative 1 and 3 singular, and the **ǣ** of the preterit indicative plural have been diphthongised respectively to **ie**, **ea**, and **ēa** by the initial palatal

sc (see 91).

106. Two verbs of Class IV are irregular:

cuman , <i>come</i>	cōm (cwōm)	cōmon (cwōmon)	cumen
niman , <i>take</i>	nam (nōm)	nōmon (nāmon)	numen

107. Strong verbs of Class V have stems ending in a single consonant which is neither a liquid nor a nasal. The Old English ablaut is: **e**, **æ**, **ǣ**, **e**, which, it should be observed, is

³⁶ Since the **æ** of the preterit singular came from earlier **a**, the original ablaut of Class IV was the same in the present and preterit singular as that of Class III; see 102.

the same as that of Class IV except in the past participle. Representative verbs are:

metan, <i>measure</i>	mæt	mæton	meten
sprecan, <i>speak</i>	spræc	spræcon	sprecen
tredan, <i>tread</i>	træd	trædon	treden
cweðan, <i>say</i>	cwæp	cwædon	cweden ³⁷

In two verbs:

ġiefan, <i>give</i>	ġeaf	ġeafon	ġiefen
ġietan, <i>get</i>	ġeat	ġeaton	ġieten

the *e* of the infinitive and past participle, the *æ* of the preterit indicative 1 and 3 singular, and the *ǣ* of the preterit indicative plural have been diphthongised respectively to *ie*, *ea*, and *ēa* by the initial palatal *ġ* (see 91).

READING

Matthew 18:23-34

108. For þā m is heofona rīce anlic þā m cyninge þe his þēowas ġerādegode.

Onð þā hē þæt ġerād sette, him wæs ān brōht sē him sceolde tīen þūsend punda. And þā hē næfde hwanon hē hit āgulde, hine hēt his hlāford ġesellan, ond his wif ond his cild ond eall þæt hē āhte. Þā āstreahte sē þēow hine and cwæð, "Hlāford, ġehafa ġeþyld on mē, and ic hit þē eall āġielde." Þā ġemiltsode sē hlāford him ond forġeaf him þone gylt.

Þā sē þēowa ūt ēode, hē ġemētte his efenþēowan sē him sceolde ān hund peninga; ond hē nam hine þā and forþrysmode hine ond cwæð, "Āġief þæt þū mē scealt." And þā āstreahte his efenþēowa hine ond bād hine ond þus cwæð, "Ġeþyldigā, ond ic hit þē eall āġiefe." Hē ðā nolde; ac fērde ond wearp hine on cweartern, oð ðæt hē him eall āġeafe.

³⁷ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above.

Ðā ġesāwon his efenþēowas þæt, ðā wurdon hīe swiðe
 ġeunrōtsode ond cōmon and sæġdon hira hlāforde ealle þā
 dæde. Ðā clipode his hlāford hine and cwæþ tō him, “Ealā
 þū lȳpra þēowa, ealne þinne gylt ic ðē forġeaf, for þām þe ðū
 mē bæde; hū ne ġebyrede þē ġemiltsian þīnum efenðēowan,
 swā swā ic þē ġemiltsode?” Ðā wæs sē hlāford ierre, ond
 sealde hine þām wītnerum, oð þæt hē eall āgulde.

Swā dēþ mīn sē heofonlica Fæder ġif ġē of ēowerum heortum
 ēowerum brōðrum ne forġiefað.

næfde, contraction of **ne hæfde**.

ġehafa, imp. 2 person sing. of **ġehabban**.

ġemiltsode, note that this verb is followed by the dat., not the acc.

scealt, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **sculan**.

ġeþyldīga, imp. 2 person sing. of **ġeþyldigian**.

nołde, contraction of **ne wolde**.

ġesāwon, pret. ind. 3 person plur. of **ġesēon**.

CHAPTER XIV

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES VI AND VII

109. Strong Verbs: Class VI. The Old English ablaut of strong verbs of Class VI is: **a, ō, ȝ, a**. Representative verbs of this class are:

faran , <i>go</i>	fōr	fōron	faren ³⁸
galan , <i>sing</i>	gōl	gōlon	galen
standan	stōd	stōdon	standen
(stondan) <i>stand</i>			(stonden)

110. Strong Verbs: Class VII. The seventh class of strong verbs, frequently called the reduplicating verbs, is different in character from the other classes. The preterit is formed by means of ablaut or vowel change, but the ablaut has no such uniformity as we have found in Classes I, II, and VI. Nor are the variations of the kind that exist in Classes III, IV, and V. [In those classes the uniformity of the original ablaut has been somewhat obscured by the influence of nasals and initial palatals and by breaking,] but when these sound changes are understood the original uniformity of the ablaut is still recognizable. No such uniformity of ablaut can be made out in Class VII. The present and past participle of these verbs have as their stem vowel **a** (or **o**) followed by a nasal, **ā, æ, ē, ea, ēa**, or **ō**, and the preterit has either **ē** or **ēo**. They are most conveniently classified according to their preterit.

³⁸ In the past participle of these verbs we sometimes find **æ** as the stem vowel, but more often **a**. The forms with **æ** are phonetically the regular forms; the forms with **a** are due to the analogy of the infinitive and other present forms of the verb which regularly had **a** as their stem vowel.

111. Verbs with *ē* in Preterit. Representative verbs with *ē* in the preterit are:

<i>hātan, call</i>	<i>hēt</i>	<i>hēton</i>	<i>hāten</i> ³⁹
<i>lētan, let</i>	<i>lēt</i>	<i>lēton</i>	<i>lēten</i>
<i>rādan, counsel</i>	<i>rēd</i>	<i>rēdon</i>	<i>rāden</i>
<i>slāpan, sleep</i>	<i>slēp</i>	<i>slēpon</i>	<i>slāpen</i>

112. Verbs with *ēo* in Preterit. Representative verbs with *ēo* in the preterit are:

<i>gangan (gongan), go</i>	<i>ġēong</i>	<i>ġēongon</i>	<i>gangen(gongen)</i>
<i>cnāwan, know</i>	<i>cnēow</i>	<i>cnēowon</i>	<i>cnāwen</i>
<i>sāwan, sow</i>	<i>sēow</i>	<i>sēowon</i>	<i>sāwen</i>
<i>feallan, fall</i>	<i>fēoll</i>	<i>fēollon</i>	<i>feallen</i>
<i>healdan, hold</i>	<i>hēold</i>	<i>hēoldon</i>	<i>healden</i>
<i>bēatan, beat</i>	<i>bēot</i>	<i>bēoton</i>	<i>bēaten</i>
<i>hēawan, hew</i>	<i>hēow</i>	<i>hēowon</i>	<i>hēawen</i>
<i>flōwan, flow</i>	<i>flēow</i>	<i>flēowon</i>	<i>flōwen</i>

113. It is important to observe that in the verbs of Class VII (as in those of Class VI) the vowel of the preterit plural is the same as that of the preterit singular, and that (as in Classes V and VI) the vowel of the past participle is the same as that of the infinitive.

114. In many grammars all of these verbs are called "reduplicating verbs" because in Gothic the verbs of this class have preterits which prefix to the root a reduplicating syllable, consisting of the initial consonant plus the sound of *e* (spelled in Gothic *ai*): *slēpan, sai-slēp*; *lētan, lai-lōt*.⁴⁰ In all the other

³⁹ To this verb belong the only traces in Old English of the original Germanic passive voice; *hätte* (*is called* or *was called*) corresponds to the Gothic present indicative third person singular passive *haitada*. The plural of *hätte* is *hätton*.

⁴⁰ Reduplication was an important method of tense formation in the older Indo-European languages. In Greek and Sanskrit the perfect was almost always a reduplicating tense. In Latin many verbs retain reduplication in their perfect. Thus Latin *dare, canere, and cadere* have as their perfects *dedi, cecini, and cecidi*.

Germanic languages except Gothic, however, this reduplicating preterit has almost completely disappeared, leaving only a few traces; e.g., in Old English, chiefly in poetry, occur occasionally:

hēht ,	preterit singular of hātan ,	beside regular hēt
reord ,	" " " rædan ,	" " rēd
leolc ,	" " " lācan	" " lēc

The usual preterit of these so-called reduplicating verbs in Old English (as in Old Norse, Old Saxon, and Old High German) is an ablaut tense form.

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

115. The preceding part of this story tells how Apollonius, the Prince of Tyre, leaves his own land because of the enmity of Antiochus, king of Antioch, and takes refuge in Tarsus. When he leaves Tarsus to seek another place of refuge his ship is wrecked and Apollonius is the only man whose life is saved. He is carried naked to land, where he meets a fisherman who gives him some clothing. Going to the neighboring city of Pentapolis, he makes the acquaintance of King Arcestrates at the bath and impresses the king so favorably that Arcestrates afterwards sends a messenger to invite him to his banquet. It is at this point that our selection begins.

Đā Apollonius þæt gehierde¹, hē þām gehiersumode² and ēode³ forð mid þām menn, oð⁴ þæt hē becōm tō ðæs cyninges healle. Đā ēode sē mann in beforan⁵ tō ðām cyninge and cwæð, "Sē forliden⁶ monn is cumen, þe ðū æfter sendest⁷, ac hē ne mæg for scame⁸ in gān būton scrūde⁹." Đā hēt¹⁰ sē cyning hine sōna gescrýdan¹¹ mid weorðfullum scrūde and hēt hine in gān tō ðām gereorde.¹² Đā ēode Apollonius in and gesæt¹³ þær him getāht¹⁴ was on gēan ðone cyning. Đær wearð¹⁵ ðā sēo þegnung¹⁶ in geboren ond æfter þām cynelic gebēorscipe¹⁷; ond Apollonius nān ðing ne æt¹⁸, ðeah ðe ealle oðre menn æton and bliðe wæron. Ac hē behēold þæt gold ond þæt seolfor ond ðā dēorwierðan¹⁹ rēaf²⁰ ond þā bēodas²¹ and ðā cynelican þegnunga. Đā ðā hē þis eall mid sārnesse²² behēold, ðā sæt sum eald ond sum æfestig²³.

○ Datie meuter after gehiersumode

25- sārness - ē = sorrow, grief.
26- æfestig - adj = envious

Surf = zero, over, only

3. misþynćan WT = appeal incorrectly.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES VI AND VII

61

4. forleosan, forleus, forluren, forloren 2 = lose, destroy.
ealdormann þe þām cyninge. Mid þy þe hē geseah þæt Apol-
lonius swā sārlice sæt ond eall þing behēold ond nān ðing ne
æt, ðā cwæð hē tō ðām cyninge, "Ðu gōða cyning, efne þēs
monn, þe þū swā wel wið gegēst, hē is swiðe æfestful for ðinum
gōde." Ðācwæð sē cyning, "þe misþyncð; sōðlice þēs geonga
mann ne æfestað on nānum ðingum ðe hē hēr gesiehð, ac hē
cýðð þæt hē hæfð fela forloren."

ġetāht, past part. of ġetācan.

æt, pret. ind. 3 person sing of etan, Class V; note the irregularity of the
ablaut.

misþynć, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of misþynćan.

gesiehð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of ġeseon.

cýðð, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of cýðan. = make known

1. ġetūcan - WT - hear.

2. ġetūmian - WT - obey.

3. ġan, eoca, ġan A. go, eat.

4. mtl - old.

5. beforan - prep - before.

6. forleosan - adj - shipwrecked.

7. neacan WT - send.

8. magan, mag, magan, meahte = PP, be able.

9. scama - tan - shame, modestly.

10 - utan - prep - without, except, outside.

11 - ġeml, n - clothes, garments.

12 - hutan, het, hutan, hēlen - command, nam - 7.

13 - sōna - adv - immediately.

14. ġetūcan - WT - clothe.

15. ġetūcan - n - food, feast.

16. ġetūtan, ġeset, ġesetan, ġesetan, ġ = ail, take a seat.

17. ġetūcan, ġetahle, ġetahle WT = teach, learn.

18. weapan, weap, weapan, weapan, weapan = became a war, fight.

19. þegnum - t - service, belong, war, first course.

20. þe hēarscipe - n - first.

21. ġetan, set, etan, ġetan - ġ = eat.

22. ġetūcan - adv - unusually, amazingly.

CHAPTER XV

GEMINATION AND UMLAUT

116. In order that the student may have an adequate understanding of the inflection of the first class of weak verbs it is necessary that he shall become acquainted with two sound changes known as **gemination** and **i-umlaut**. The first of these sound changes, gemination, was not an Old English sound change, but took place during the period when Old English had not yet become distinguished from the other languages of the West Germanic group. That is, it was a West Germanic sound change. The second of them, **i-umlaut**, took place in Old English itself, at a period later than the change of **a** to **æ**, breaking, and diphthongisation by initial palatals.

117. **Gemination.** In the West Germanic period, a single consonant (except **r**) preceded by a **short** vowel was geminated (or doubled) by a following **j**. Thus:

Gmc ***satjan** (cf. Gothic **satjan**) became WGmc ***sattjan** (cf. Old Saxon **settian**).

Gmc ***biðjan**⁴² (cf. Gothic **bidjan**) became WGmc ***biddjan** (cf. Old Saxon **biddian**).

Gmc ***lagjan** (cf. Gothic **lagjan**) became WGmc ***laggjan** (cf. Old Saxon **leggian**).

⁴² The character **ð** is used here to represent the voiced sound of **th**; this Gmc sound became **d** in West Germanic. In 118 the character **θ** is used in **skaθjan** to represent the voiceless sound of **th**.

118. **Exercise.** Give the West Germanic forms of the following Germanic words:

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. *hlahjan | 7. *dōmjan | 13. *dunjan |
| 2. *skapjan | 8. *bandjan | 14. *cwaljan |
| 3. *framjan | 9. *brugjum | 15. *latjan |
| 4. *ligjan | 10. *tūnjan | 16. *gramjan |
| 5. *skaθjan | 11. *farjan | 17. *swarjan |
| 6. *saljan | 12. *stapjan | 18. *trumjan |

119. **i-Umlaut.** One of the most important sound changes that took place in Old English was **i-umlaut**. [Umlaut in general is a change produced in a vowel sound by some other sound which follows it; **i-umlaut** was a change produced in a vowel or diphthong by an **i, ī, or j** in the following syllable. The changes which took place in Old English as the result of **i-umlaut** are shown, with illustrations, in the following table:

a (o) before nasals became e ⁴³ as in	menn	from Prehistoric OE	*manni.
ā became æ,	as in	hālan	from " OE *hāljan.
æ became e, ⁴⁴	as in	eġe	from " OE *æġi.
e ⁴⁵ became i	as in	sittan	from Primitive Gmc *setjanan.
o ⁴⁶ became e	as in	dehter	from Prehistoric OE *dohtri.

⁴³ As to the interchange between **a** and **o** see 81. In the earliest texts we find **æ** as the umlaut of **a** (o) before nasals; in the later texts the umlaut is **e**.

⁴⁴ Before two consonants, however, as in **fæstan** from Prehistoric OE *fæstjan **æ** usually remained unchanged. Before geminated consonants the umlaut **o, f æ** is **e**.

⁴⁵ The change of **e** to **i** was not a part of the OE umlaut but a Primitive Gmc change which preceded that by several centuries. It appears in the early stage of all Gmc languages.

⁴⁶ The apparent umlaut of **o** to **y** in such words as **gylden** beside **gold** is really an umlaut of **u** to **y**. A long time before the period of **i-umlaut** these words were *gulðinaz and *gulðan. In *gulðan the vowel **u** was changed to **o** under the influence of the vowel **a** of the following syllable (cf. 102), but the **u** remained unchanged in *gulðinaz. At the time **i-umlaut** began these words were *guldin and *gold. Then *guldin became *gyldin (later **gylden**) but *gold remained **gold**.

ō became ē	as in	dēman	from Prehistoric OE	*dōmjan.
u became y	as in	fyllan	from	" *fulljan.
ū became ŷ	as in	tȳnan	from	" " *tūnjan.
ea became ie (LWS i or y) as in		fielþ	from	" " *feallþ.
ēa became ie (LWS i or ŷ) as in		hieran	from	" " *hēarjan.
io ⁴⁷ became ie (LWS i or y) as in		wierpþ	from	" " *wiorpþ.
io ⁴⁸ became ie (LWS i or ŷ) as in		ġeþiedan	from	" " *ġeþiodjan.

120. The changes which resulted from *i*-umlaut took place at a date (roughly between 500 and 600) earlier than that of our oldest records of the language. By the time of Alfred the Great (who died in 901) the sounds which had caused umlaut had largely disappeared from the language. We know, however, that they existed at an earlier period, partly from the forms which we find in the very earliest records (between 700 and 800), and partly because we can reconstruct Prehistoric Old English by a comparison of Old English with the other Germanic languages—Old Saxon, Old High German, Old Norse, and (most particularly) Gothic.

⁴⁷ The apparent umlaut of *eo* to *ie* which appears, e.g., in *wierpþ*, pres. ind. 3 sing. of *weorpan*, is really an umlaut of *io* to *ie*. In Primitive Gmc, *weorpan* was **werpanan* and *wierpþ* was **werpþ*; the *e* of **werpþ*, however, was umlauted to *i* in Primitive Gmc itself (see note 45 above), so that the Prehistoric OE forms were **werpan* and **wirpþ*. The *e* of **werpan* was broken to *eo* in OE and the *i* of **wirpþ* was broken to *io* (see 85), giving *weorpan* and **wiorpþ*. Then in the period of OE umlaut **wiorpþ* became **wierpþ*, later *wierpþ*.

⁴⁸ The apparent umlaut of *ēo* to *ie* which appears, e.g., in *cliefþ*, pres. ind. 3 sing. of *clēofan*, is really an umlaut of *io* to *ie*. In Primitive Gmc *clēofan* was **cleufanan* and *cliefþ* was **cleufþ*. But the diphthong *eu* was umlauted to *iu* in Primitive Gmc whenever it was followed in the next syllable by *i*, *i*, or *j*, so that **cleufþ* became **cliufþ*. In OE these diphthongs developed respectively into *ēo* and *io*, so that the Prehistoric OE forms were **clēofan* and **cliōfþ*. Then in the period of OE umlaut **cliōfþ* became **cliefþ*, later *cliefþ*.

✓ 121. **Exercise.** Convert the following Prehistoric Old English forms into the forms that would occur in the language of the year 900, being careful to observe that after causing umlaut

(1) Final **i** disappeared after a long syllable (cf. 48), but was retained after a short syllable.

(2) Medial **j** disappeared after all consonants except single r preceded by a short vowel or short diphthong; when retained it is written **i**.

(3) Final unstressed **i**, when not lost according to (1), became **e** when interior it became **e** except when followed by **c, g, sc, or ng**.

1. *nærjan	12. *wealmi	23. *bandjan
2. *morgin	13. *wullin	24. *dāli
3. *lārjan	14. *sōcjan	25. *liohtjan
4. *hwearfjan	15. *fūsjan	26. *flāsci
5. *bōci	16. *huldi	27. *wurmi
6. *fiorrjan	17. *stædi	28. *cūþjan
7. *sandjan	18. *ealdista	29. *sleahti
8. *rārjan	19. *sættjan	30. *huġi
9. *lādjan	20. *hæti	31. *hærjan
10. *brūdi	21. *ēacjan	32. *frammjan
11. *slægi	22. *sōfti	33. *hæfig

122. When we consider these changes in the light of the explanation given in Chapter I of the manner in which the various vowel sounds are produced (see 7-13), we see that the changes that result from umlaut are not arbitrary changes, but proceed upon a common principle. The vowels **i** and **ī** are **high front** vowels, produced with the front of the tongue close to the roof of the mouth, and **j** is a consonantal variety of the same sound. Now the changes produced by **i**-umlaut all result in assimilating the umlauted vowel or diphthong more closely to the high front vowels **i, ī**. The **back** vowels **ā, o, ō, u, ū** become the corresponding **front** vowels **æ, e, ē, y**,

and $\bar{y}$.⁴⁹ The front vowels assimilate more closely to the i position by being pronounced with the tongue closer to the roof of the mouth, æ being raised to e and e being raised to i .

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

123. Ðā beseah Arcestrates sē cyning blīðe andwlitan tō Apollonio ond cwæð, “Ðū geonga monn, bēo blīðe mid ūs and gehyht on God þæt þū mōte self tō ðām sēlrum becuman.” Mid þȳ ðe sē cyning þās word gecwæð, ðā fāringa þær ēode in ðæs cynninges geong dohtor ond cyste hire fæder ond ðā ymsittendan. þā hēo becōm tō Apollonio, þā gewende hēo ongēan tō hire fæder and cwæð, “Ðū gōða cyning ond mīn sē lēofosta fæder, hwæt is þēs geonga mann þe ongēan ðe on swā weorðlicum setle sitt mid sārlicum ondwlitan? Nāt ic hwæt hē besorgað.” Ðā cwæð sē cyning, “Lēofe dohtor, þēs geonga monn is forliden, ond hē gecwēmd e mē manna betst on ðām plegan; for ðām ic hine gelaðode tō ðisum ūrum gebēorscipe. Nāt ic hwæt hē is nē hwanon hē is; ac gif ðū wille witan hwæt hē sīe, āsca hine, for ðām þē gedafenað þæt þū wite.”

bēo, imp. 2 person sing. of **bēon**.

gehyht, imp. 2 person sing. of **gehyhtan**.

sitt, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **sittan**.

nāt, contraction of **ne wāt**.

wille, pres. subj. 2 person sing. of **willan**.

sīe, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **bēon**.

āasca, imp. 2 person sing. of **āscian**.

wite, pres. subj. 2 person sing. of **witan**.

⁴⁹ The round vowels o and $\bar{o}$ were unrounded, but u and $\bar{u}$ retained their rounding, being changed from back round to front round vowels; see 12, 13, and also 251 with footnotes 36 and 37.

1. *andwlitan* = to go
2. *gehyhtan* = to hope, trust
3. *mōte*, *mōt*, *mōtan*, *mōt* = to be able to
4. *sēlra*, comp. adj. = better
5. *gecwæð*, *gecwæp*, *gecwæc*, *gecwæc* = to speak
6. *fāringa* = travelling

CHAPTER XVI

SYNCOATED PRESENT FORMS OF STRONG VERBS

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

124. It was stated in a preceding chapter (see 67) that the present indicative second and third persons singular of strong verbs are formed by adding to the present stem of the verb the endings **-est** and **-eþ**. Thus the second and third persons singular of **cuman** and **brecan** would be **cumest**, **cumeþ** and **brecest**, **breceþ**. These forms occur to a limited extent in the West-Saxon dialect and are the prevailing forms in the Anglian dialect. The prevailing forms in the West-Saxon dialect, however, are not **cumest**, **cumeþ** and **brecest**, **breceþ**, but **cymst**, **cymbþ** and **bricst**, **bricþ**. That is, the vowel of the stem is umlauted in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and the vowel of the ending is syncopated.⁵⁰ These forms of the verb have umlaut because the endings in Prehistoric Old English were ***-is** and ***-iþ**.

125. In verbs whose stems end in **d**, **þ**, or **s**, assimilation takes place when the vowel of the ending **-est** is syncopated. Thus,

d followed by **st** becomes **tst**, as in **bīstst** from **bīdan**;

þ followed by **st** becomes **tst** or **st** as in **snītst** from **snīðan**,
cwist from **cweðan**;

s followed by **st** becomes **st** as in **ċiest** from **ċēosan**.

⁵⁰ Syncopation (or syncope) is the loss of a vowel between two consonants. The unsyncopated forms of the Pres. Ind. 2 and 3 Sing. are usually without umlaut, and the syncopated forms nearly always have umlaut, but it must not be supposed that the syncopation was the cause of the umlaut. The forms without umlaut were later formations made on the analogy of the plural and the first person singular, which had no umlaut.

In verbs whose stems end in **d**, **t**, **þ**, or **s**, assimilation takes place when the vowel of the ending **-eþ** is syncopeated. Thus, **d** followed by **þ** becomes **tt** (or **t**) as in **bitt** (**bīt**) from **bīdan**; **t** followed by **þ** becomes **tt** (or **t**) as in **writt** (**writ**) from **writan**;

þ followed by **þ** becomes **þþ** (or **þ**) as in **cwiþþ** (**cwiþ**) from **cweðan**;

s followed by **þ** becomes **st** as in **ċiest** from **ċēosan**.

Double consonants are simplified when the ending that follows them is syncopeated, as in **fielþ** from **feallan**.

X (126.) Exercise. Construct [the syncopeated and umlauted forms of the present indicative second and third persons singular] of the following strong verbs: [etan, brūcan, drincan, helpan, weorpan,⁵¹ beran, weorðan,⁵¹ gongan, bēodan,⁵² cnāwan, heal-dan, flōwan, rīsan, ċēosan,⁵² sprecan.]

127. Comparison of Adjectives. The comparative degree of adjectives is formed in Old English dy adding to the stem **-ra**;⁵³ the superlative is formed by adding **-ost**. For example:

<i>glæd, glad</i>	<i>glædra, gladder</i>	<i>gladost, gladdest</i>
<i>heard, hard</i>	<i>heardra</i>	<i>heardost</i>
<i>lēof, dear</i>	<i>lēofra</i>	<i>lēofost</i>
<i>rīce, powerful</i>	<i>rīcra</i>	<i>rīcost</i>

The comparative is always declined weak; the superlative may be declined either weak or strong; see 77.

128. Some adjectives, which had in Prehistoric Old English the comparative and superlative endings ***-ira** and ***-ist**, have umlaut in the comparative and superlative; these adjectives

⁵¹ See note 47 above.

⁵² See note 48 above.

⁵³ **-ra** for the masculine nominative singular, **-re** for the feminine and neuter nominative singular.

have the ending **-est** in the superlative. Those adjectives which are without umlaut had the endings **-ora** and **-ost** in Prehistoric Old English. Examples of adjectives that have umlaut in the comparative and superlative are:

eald , <i>old</i>	ieldra	ieldest
lang (<i>long</i>), <i>long</i>	lengra	lengest
strang (<i>strong</i>), <i>strong</i>	strengra	strengest

With **-st** in the superlative:

hēah , <i>high</i>	hiehra , <i>hierra</i>	hiehst
---------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------

For further details in regard to the comparison of adjectives see the Reference Grammar (364-366).

129. Comparison of Adverbs. Adverbs that admit of comparison usually end in **e** and form their comparative and superlative by adding to the stem **-or** and **-ost**. For example:

ġeorne , <i>eagerly</i>	ġeornor	ġeornost
lēoflice , <i>lovingly</i>	lēoflicor	lēoflicost

For further details in regard to the comparison and formation of adverbs see the Reference Grammar (378).

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

130. Ðā ēode þæt mægden tō Apollonio ond mid forwandiendre spræce cwæð, “Ðēah ðū stille sīe and unrōt, þēah ic þīne æðelborennesse on ðē gesēo. Nū þonne, ġif ðē tō hefigne þryce, seġe mē þīnne noman, ond þīn ġelimp āreče mē.” Ðā cwæð Apollonius, “Ġif ðū for nēode āscast æfter mīnum naman, ic secge þē, ic hine forlēas on sǣ; ġif ðū wilt mīne æðelborennesse witan, wite ðū þæt ic hīe forlēt on Tharsum.” Ðæt mægden cwæð, “Seġe mē ġewislicor, þæt ic hit mæge understandan.” Apollonius þā sōðlice hire āreahte eall his ġelimp ond æt þære spræce ende him feollon tēaras of ðām ēagam. Mid þy þe sē cyning þæt ġeseah, hē bewende hine

ðā tō ðære dohtor ond cwæð, "Lēofe dohtor, þū ġesyngodest; mið þy þe þū woldest witan his naman and his ġelimp, þū hafast nū ġeednīwod his ealde sār. Ac ic bidde þē þæt þū ġiefe him swā hwæt swā ðū wille."

forwandiendre, pres. participle of **forwandian**.

sīe, pres. subj. 2 person sing. of **bēon**.

þynċe, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **þynċan**.

seġe, imp. 2 person sing. of **secgan**.

āreċe, imp. 2 person sing. of **āreċcan**.

wite, imp. 2 person sing. of **witan**.

mæġe, pres. subj. 1 person sing. of **magan**.

hafast, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **habban**.

CHAPTER XVII ✓

WEAK VERBS: CLASS I

131. **Weak Verbs** (see 49, 50). There are three classes of weak verbs in Old English. In verbs of Class I the infinitive ends in **-an** (but **-ian** when the stem of the verb ends in single **r** preceded by a short vowel or short diphthong); the preterit indicative first person singular ends in **-ede**, **-de**, or **-te**; the past participle ends in **-ed**, **-d**, or **-t**.

132. Most weak verbs are derived from nouns, from adjectives, or from strong verbs. The relation of weak verbs to the nouns, adjectives, and strong verbs from which they are derived may be illustrated by some examples of weak verbs of Class I.

(1) From nouns are derived:

dēman, *judge*, from Gmc ***dōm-jan** (cf. OE **dōm**, *judgment*)

cemban, *comb*, from Gmc ***kamb-jan** (cf. OE **camb**, *comb*)

wemman, *defile*, from Gmc ***wamm-jan** (cf. OE **wamm**, *stain*)

ferian, *carry*, from prim. Gmc ***far-jan** (cf. OE **fær**, *journey*).

(2) From adjectives are derived:

ġiernan, *desire*, from prim. Gmc ***ġern-jan** (cf. OE **ġeorn**, *desirous*)

scierpan, *sharpen*, from Gmc ***skarp-jan** (cf. OE **scearp**, *sharp*)

trymman, *strengthen*, from Gmc ***trum-jan** (cf. OE **trum**, *strong*)

fyllan, *fill*, from Gmc ***full-jan** (cf. OE **full**, *full*).

(3) From strong verbs are derived:

wendan, *turn*, from Gmc ***wand-jan** (cf. OE **wand**, pret. of **windan**, *wind*)

drenčan, *cause to drink*, from Gmc ***drank-jan** (cf. OE **dranc**, pret. of **drincan**, *drink*).

fēran, *go*, from Gmc ***fōr-jan** (cf. OE **fōr**, pret. of **faran**, *go*)

settan, *set*, from Gmc ***sat-jan** (cf. OE **sæt**, pret. of **sittan**, *sit*)

It will be observed that the stems of some of these verbs (**dēman**, **cemban**, **wemman**, **ġiernan**, **scierpan**, **fyllan**, **wendan**, **drenčan**, and **fēran**) were already long in Germanic. The stems of others (**ferian**, **trymman**, and **settan**) were originally short in Germanic. But the stems of **trymman** and **settan** were long in Prehistoric OE because the final consonants **m** and **t** were geminated or doubled (see 117) before the **j** which followed them, Germanic ***trum-jan** and ***sat-jan** becoming West Germanic ***trumm-jan** and ***satt-jan**, which later developed into Old English **trymman** and **settan** (see 119-21). The originally short stem of **ferian**, however, remained short in Old English because the consonant **r** was not subject to gemination.

133. It has been said that the weak verbs of Class I have as the ending of the preterit indicative first person singular either **-ede** or **-de**, **-te**. In order to determine whether the ending of a verb is **-ede** on the one hand or **-de**, **-te** on the other, we must know whether the stem of the verb was originally short or originally long. The verbs whose stems were originally short may be recognised from the fact that their stems in Old English contain a short vowel or short diphthong followed by a geminated consonant or **r**. The verbs whose stems were originally long may be recognised from the fact that their stems in Old English contain either (1) a long vowel or long diphthong or (2) a short vowel or short diphthong followed by two consonants or a double consonant that is not the result of gemination.⁵⁴

⁵⁴ Whether or not a **double** consonant is a **geminated** consonant can be ascertained only from a knowledge of the etymology of the word in which it occurs, for there were double consonants before the period of gemination. For example, we know that **ll** of **fyllan** is not a geminated consonant because **ll** appears also in the adjective **full**, and we know that the **mm** of **trymman** is a geminated consonant because the corresponding adjective, **trum**, has only a

134. Verbs with originally short stems form their preterit indicative first person singular by means of the ending **-ede**, and their past participle by means of the ending **-ed**. The principal parts of representative verbs are as follows:

fremman , <i>make</i>	fremede	fremed
trymman , <i>strengthen</i>	trymede	trymed
nerian , <i>save</i>	nerede	nered
ferian , <i>carry</i>	ferede	fered

135. Verbs with originally long stems form their preterit indicative first person singular by means of the ending **-de** or **-te**; that is, the middle vowel was **syncopated** in these verbs. They form their past participle by means of the ending **-ed**. When the stem of the verb ends in a voiced consonant (see 2), the ending is **-de**; but when the stem ends in a voiceless consonant, the ending is **-te**. Representative verbs are:

dēman , <i>judge</i>	dēmdē	dēmed
dālan , <i>share</i>	dāldē	dāled
cemban , <i>comb</i>	cembde	cembēd
ærnan , <i>gallop</i>	ærnde	ærned
cēpan , <i>keep</i>	cēpte	cēped
scierpan , <i>sharpen</i>	scierpte	scierped
ād wāscan , <i>quench</i>	ād wāscete	ād wāscēd
fyllan , <i>fill</i>	fylde⁵⁵	fyllēd

136. But verbs whose stems end in d or t always syncopate the middle vowel of the preterit ending, no matter whether the stem was originally long or originally short, so that the ending becomes **-de** or **-te**. The vowel of the ending of the past

single **m**. But most of the OE double consonants *are* geminated consonants. In practice, therefore, we may assume that a double consonant is a geminated consonant unless we know that it did *not* result from gemination.

⁵⁵ Note that in verbs like **fyllan** (see preceding note) the double consonant was simplified in the preterit.

participle may also be syncopated, so that it becomes **-dd** or **-tt** instead of **-ed**. Representative verbs are:

hreddan , <i>save</i>	hredde	hreded , hredd ⁵⁶
settan , <i>set</i>	sette	seted , sett
lādan , <i>lead</i>	lādde	lāded , lādd
mētan , <i>meet</i>	mētte	mēted , mētt

Verbs whose stems end in **d** or **t** preceded by another consonant have only a single **d** or **t** in the preterit and in the syncopated form of the past participle. Examples are:

wendan , <i>turn</i>	wende	wended , wend
fæstan , <i>make fast</i>	fæste	fæsted , fæst

+ 137. Exercise. Form the principal parts of the following weak verbs of Class I: *hælan*, *herian*, *fēdan*, *wēnan*, *sendan*, *bētan*, *swenčan*, *hlynnan*, *temman*, *erian*, *glengan*.⁵⁷

138. The full conjugation of weak verbs of Class I, exemplified by **fremman**, **nerian**, and **dēman**, is as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present Sing. 1	fremme	nerie	dēme
2	fremest	nerest	dēmest , dēmst
3	fremeþ	nerেþ	dēmeþ , dēmþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3	fremmaþ	neriaþ	dēmaþ
Preterit Sing. 1	fremede	nerede	dēmde
2	fremedest	neredest	dēmdest
3	fremede	nerede	dēmde
Plur. 1, 2, 3	fremedon	neredon	dēmdon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	fremme	nerie	dēme
Plur. 1, 2, 3	fremmen	nerien	dēmen
Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	fremede	nerede	dēmde
Plur. 1, 2, 3	fremeden	nereden	dēmden

⁵⁶ These past participles in **-dd**, **-tt** were also written with a single **d** or **t**; see 240.

⁵⁷ The double consonants in *hlynnan* and *temman* are geminated consonants; see note 54.

IMPERATIVE

Present Sing. 2	freme	nere	dēm
Plur. 2	fremmaþ	neriaþ	dēmaþ
Infinitive	fremman	nerian	dēman
Gerund	tō fremmenne	tō nerienne	tō dēmenne
Present Participle	fremmende	neriende	dēmende
Past Participle	fremed	nered	dēmed

139. For the indicative endings employed in this conjugation see 51 and 67. The subjunctive endings are the same as those of the strong verb: **-e** in the singular and **-en** in the plural. Verbs with originally long stems (e.g., **dēman**) have no ending in the imperative singular; verbs with originally short stems (e.g., **fremman** and **nerian**) have the ending **-e**.

140. With regard to the inflection of weak verbs of Class I, the following points should be noted:

- (1) That in the present indicative, present subjunctive, imperative, infinitive, gerund, and present participle,
 - (a) Verbs like **nerian** prefix **i** to the endings except in the present indicative second and third singular and the imperative singular;
 - (b) Verbs like **fremman** have a geminated consonant following the radical vowel except in the present indicative second and third singular and the imperative singular;
- (2) That in the preterit indicative, preterit subjunctive, and past participle,
 - (a) Verbs like **nerian** do not prefix **i** to the endings;
 - (b) Verbs like **fremman** do not have a geminated consonant following the radical vowel.

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

141. Ðā ðā þæt mægden gehjerde þæt hire wæs āliefed
from hire fæder þæt hēo ær hire self gedōn wolde, ðā cwæð hēo

tō Apollonio, "Apolloni, sōðlice þū eart ūre. Forlæt þīne murcnu^{ne}ge, ond nū ic mīnes fæder lēafe hæbbe, ic ġedō ðē weligne." Apollonius hire þæs þancode, and sē cyning blisode on his dohtor welwillendnesse ond hire tō cwæð, "Lēofe dohtor, hāt feccan þīne hearpan, and ġecīeg ðē tō þīne frīend, ond āfeorsa fram þām ġeongan his sārnesse." Ðā ēode hēo ūt ond hēt feccan hire hearpan, and sōna swā hēo hearpian ongann, hēo mid wynsumum songe ġemengde þære hearpan swēġ. Ðā ongunnon ealle þā menn hīe herian on hire swēġ-cræfte, ond Apollonius ānā swigode. Ðā cwæð sē cyning, "Apolloni, nū ðū dēst yfele, for ðām þe ealle menn heriað mīne dohtor on hire swēġ-cræfte, and þū ānā hīe swīgiende tælst." Apollonius cwæð, "Ealā ðū gōda cyning, ġif ðū mē ġeliefst, ic secge þæt ic onġiete þæt sōðlice þīn dohtor ġereoll on swēġ-cræft, ac hēo næfð hine nā wel ġeleornod. Ac hāt mē nū sellan þā hearpan; þonne wāst þū þæt þū ġiet nāst." Arces-trates sē cyning cwæð, "Apolloni, ic oncnāwe sōðlice þæt þū eart on eallum þingum wel ġelæred,"

hæbbe, pres. ind. 1 person sing. of **habban**.

ġedō, pres. ind. 1 person sing. of **ġedōn**.

þancode, used with genitive of the object.

dohtor, gen. sing. of **dohtor**.

frīend, acc. plur. of **frēond**.

āfeorsa, imp. 2 person sing. of **āfeorsian**.

dēst, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **dōn**.

swīgiende, pres. participle of **swigian**.

næfð, contraction of **ne** and **hæfð**, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of **habban**.

wāst, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **witan**.

nāst, contraction of **ne** and **wāst**, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **witan**.

CHAPTER XVIII

WEAK VERBS: CLASS I

142. The peculiarities of inflection which were noted in paragraph 140, tho they might seem to be merely arbitrary, are the result of regular sound changes. The Germanic forms from which were derived the Old English forms of the present indicative of **fremman**, **nerian**, and **dēman** were:

Sing. 1	*framjō	*nazjō	*dōmjō
2	*framis	*nazis	*dōmis
3	*framīþ	*nazīþ	*dōmīþ
Plur. 3	*framjanþ	*nazjanþ	*dōmjanþ

The infinitive forms were ***framjan**, ***nazjan**, and ***dōmjan**, and the **j** which we see in the infinitive, the first person singular, and the plural extended also thruout the present subjunctive, the imperative plural, and the present participle.

143. The Prehistoric Old English forms of the present indicative of these verbs, before the period of **i**-umlaut, were:

Sing. 1	*frammu	*nærju ⁵⁸	*dōmju ⁵⁹
2	*framis	*næris	*dōmis ⁶⁰
3	*framīþ	*næriþ	*dōmīþ
Plur. 3	*framjab	*nærjab	*dōmjab

⁵⁸ For the change of **z** to **r** see note 32 above.

⁵⁹ In WS the old ending **-u** was replaced by the subjunctive ending **-e**.

⁶⁰ The ending **-is**, which occurs only in the oldest texts, developed regularly into **-es**, but the usual OE ending is **-est**. The **t** of this ending was acquired from the **þ** of **þū**. When **þū** followed its verb it often coalesced with it, so that **dēmes þū** became **dēmestū**; then from **dēmestū** was derived, by a false word division, the form **dēmest** as that of the present indicative 2 sing. The ending **-est** of the preterit indicative 2 sing. had a similar origin.

The infinitives were ***framman**, ***nærjan**, and ***dōmjan**. It will be observed that in ***framman** the final consonant of the stem has been geminated wherever it was followed by **j**. This gemination, as we learned in Chapter XV, took place in West Germanic. Gemination did not take place in the second and third persons singular, because no **j** followed the **m**; nor did it take place, for the same reason, in the imperative singular, which in Prehistoric Old English was ***frami**. But in all the other forms of the present tenses the **m** was followed by **j** and was therefore geminated. In accordance, however, with the law stated in 117, gemination did not take place in verbs like **dēman** whose stems were originally long. Nor did it take place in verbs like **nerian** with originally short stems ending in **r**. It took place, however, in all verbs like **fremman** whose stems were originally short and ended in a consonant other than **r**.

144. In Prehistoric Old English the preterit indicative forms of **fremman**, **nerian**, and **dēman** were:

Sing. 1	*framide	*nærīde	*dōmīde
2	*framides	*nærīdes	*dōmīdes
3	*framide	*nærīde	*dōmīde
Plur. 3	*framidun	*nærīdun	*dōmīdun

The past participles were ***framid**, ***nærīd**, and ***dōmīd**. From these forms the later Old English forms were derived. The middle vowel **i**, after causing umlaut, was syncopated if the stem was long, but was retained if the stem was short. If retained it then became **e**. Since the preterit forms contained no **j**, no gemination took place and the original length of the stem remained unchanged. It is for this reason that we are obliged to consider the **original** length of the stem (see 134, 135) in order to know whether the preterit ending of a verb is **-de** (**-te**) on the one hand or **-ede** on the other.

145. Since every form of the weak verbs of Class I thus far discussed contained in the syllable following the stem either an *i* or a *j*, it is obvious that the vowel of the stem would be umlauted thruout the whole conjugation; **freammjan* therefore became **fremmjan*, **nærjan* became *nerjan*, and **dōmjan* became **dēmjan*, in accordance with the sound change explained in Chapter XV. After causing umlaut, *j* disappeared except in verbs like *nerian* with originally short stems ending in *r*; in those verbs it was retained, usually being written *i*.⁶¹

146. **Verbs without a Middle Vowel.** There are some weak verbs of Class I, however, which have umlaut only in the present forms and not in the preterit and past participle; examples are:

tellan, <i>count</i>	tealde	teald
cweccan, <i>shake</i>	cweahte	cweaht
sēcān, <i>seek</i>	sōhte	sōht

The lack of umlaut in the preterit and past participle is explained by the fact that the preterit and past participle of these verbs lacked the middle vowel *i* which caused umlaut in the preterit and past participle of most verbs of Class I. The principal parts in Prehistoric Old English were:

*tælljan	*tælde	*tæld
*cwæccjan	*cwæhte	*cwæht
*sōcjan	*sōhte	*sōht

In the infinitive and present forms the vowel of the stem was umlauted as in other weak verbs of Class I. In the preterit and past participle, however, no cause of umlaut was present, and the vowel of the stem remained unmodified unless, as in **tælde* and **cwæhte*, the vowel was followed by a consonant or consonant combination which caused breaking (see 85)

⁶¹ It is also written *g*, *ge*, *ig*, and *ige*, as in *nerġan*, *nerġean*, *neriġan*, *neriġean*; the sound is always that of *j*.

We may therefore divide these verbs into two classes, those which have and those which do not have a broken vowel in the preterit and past participle. The more important verbs are:

(1) <i>cweċċan, shake</i>	<i>cweahte</i> ⁶²	<i>cweaht</i>
<i>streċċan, stretch</i>	<i>streahte</i> ⁶²	<i>streaht</i>
<i>þeċċan, cover</i>	<i>þeahte</i> ⁶²	<i>þeaht</i>
<i>cwellan, kill</i>	<i>cwealde</i>	<i>cweald</i>
<i>sellan, give</i>	<i>sealde</i>	<i>seald</i>
<i>tellan, count</i>	<i>tealde</i>	<i>teald</i>
(2) <i>bycgan</i> , ⁶³ <i>buy</i>	<i>bohte</i>	<i>boht</i>
<i>sēċan, seek</i>	<i>sōhte</i>	<i>sōht</i>
<i>tāċan, teach</i>	<i>tāhte</i> ⁶²	<i>tāht</i>
<i>wyrċan</i> , ⁶³ <i>work</i>	<i>worhte</i>	<i>worht</i>
<i>brengan (bringan), bring</i>	<i>brōhte</i>	<i>brōht</i> ⁶⁴
<i>þencan, think</i>	<i>þōhte</i>	<i>þōht</i>
<i>þyncan, seem</i>	<i>þūhte</i>	<i>þūht</i>

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

147. Ðā hēt sē cyning sellan Apollonie þā hearpan. Apollonius þā ūt ēode and hine scrȳdde ond sette ānne cynehelm uppan his hēafod ond nam þā hearpan on his hond and in ēode and swā stōd þæt sē cyning and ealle þā ymbsittendan wēndon þæt hē nāre Apollonius ac þæt hē wære Apollines, ðāra hǣðenra god. Ðā wearð stilness ond swīge ġeworden innan ðære

⁶² In these verbs the unlauted vowel of the infinitive and present was often introduced by analogy into the preterit and past participle, giving *cwehte*, *strehhte*, *þehte*, *tāhte* and *cweht*, *strehht*, *þeht*, *tāht*.

⁶³ For *cg* see note 66 below; for the relation between *y* and *o* see note 46 above.

⁶⁴ The apparent irregularities of this verb and of the two which follow it were the result of regular sound changes, some of which took place in Primitive Germanic. (See 231.) The form *bringan*, which is more frequent than *brengan*, belongs to an old strong verb like *bindan*.

healle, and Apollonius his hearpenæg^{el}el genam, ond hē þā hearpestrengas mid cræfte āstyrian ongonn ond þære hearpan swēg mid wynsumum songe gēmengde. Ond sē cyning self ond ealle þe þær andwearde wæron micelre stefne clipodon and hine heredon. ^{performed}Æfter þissum forlēt Apollonius þā hearpan ond plegode ond fela fægerra þinga þær forðtēah þe þām folce ungecnāwen wæs ond ungewunelic, and heom eallum þearle licode ælc þāra þinga ðe hē forðtēah.

Sōðlice mid þy þe þæs cyninges dohtor geseah þæt Apollonius on eallum gōdum cræftum swā wel wæs getogen, þā gefēoll hire mōd on his lufe. Ðā æfter þæs bēorscipes geendunge cwæð þæt mægden tō ðām cyninge, “Lēofa fæder, þū liefdest mē lýt^{le}le ær þæt ic mōste giefan Apollonio swā hwæt swā ic wolde of þinum goldhorde.” Arcestrates sē cyning cwæð tō hire, “Gief him swā hwæt swā ðū wille.” x

CHAPTER XIX

STRONG VERBS WITH **j**-PRESENTS; NUMERALS

148. Certain strong verbs of Classes V and VI are not conjugated in the present like other strong verbs, but like **fremman**; that is, (1) the final consonant of the stem is geminated (see 117 and 143) except in the second and third indicative singular and the imperative singular, and (2) the vowel of the stem is unlauted (see 119) thruout. Thus, **biddan**, of Class V, is conjugated in the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative as follows:

Present Indicative	Sing. 1	bidde
	2	bitst, bidest
	3	bitt, bideþ
	Plur. 1, 2, 3	biddaþ
Present Subjunctive	Sing. 1, 2, 3	bidde
	Plur. 1, 2, 3	bidden
Present Imperative	Sing. 2	bide
	Plur. 2	biddaþ

149. The most important of these verbs are:

Class V. **biddan**, from Primitive Germanic ***beðjanan**⁶⁵
 licgan,⁶⁶ from Primitive Germanic ***legjanan**
 sittan, from Primitive Germanic ***setjanan**

⁶⁵ The original **e** of the infinitive and present of this verb and the two that follow it was unlauted to **i** in Primitive Germanic; see note 45 above.

⁶⁶ **cg** is the regular OE development of **gg**, which was the West Germanic gemination of Germanic **g**.

Class VI. **hebban**,⁶⁷ from Primitive Germanic ***habjanan**⁶⁸
hliehhan,⁶⁹ from Primitive Germanic ***hlahjanan**
scieppan,⁷⁰ from Primitive Germanic ***skapjanan**
sceþþan,⁷¹ from Primitive Germanic ***skabjanan**
steppan, from Primitive Germanic ***stapjanan**

One verb of Class VI is conjugated in the present like **nerian**:
swerian,⁷² from Primitive Germanic ***swarjanan**.

One verb of Class VII is conjugated in the present like **dēman**:
wēpan, from Primitive Germanic ***wōpjanan**.

150. Except in the present these verbs are conjugated like other strong verbs of their respective classes. The principal parts are as follows:

Class V.	biddan , <i>ask</i>	bæd	bædon	beden ⁷³
	licgan , <i>lie</i>	læġ	lægon	leġen
	sittan , <i>sit</i>	sæt	sæton	seten
Class VI.	hebban , <i>heave</i>	hōf	hōfon	hafen ⁷⁴ - (b)
	hliehhan , <i>laugh</i>	hlōh	hlōgon ⁷⁵	
	scieppan , <i>create</i>	scōp	scōpon	sceapen ⁷⁶
	sceþþan , <i>injure</i>	scōd*	scōdon ⁷⁷	
	steppan , <i>step</i>	stōp	stōpon	stapen
	swerian , <i>swear</i>	swōr	swōron	swaren , sworen
Class VII.	wēpan , <i>weep</i>	wēop	wēopon	wōpen

⁶⁷ **bb** is the regular OE gemination of Germanic **h**; see note 68 below.

⁶⁸ The character **h** represents a sound somewhat like Modern English **v**.

⁶⁹ In this verb the original **a** of the infinitive and present, having changed to **æ** in Prehistoric OE, was first broken to **ea** before **hh** (see 85) and then umlauted to **ie**.

⁷⁰ In this verb the original **a** was first changed to **æ** in Prehistoric OE, was then diphthongised to **ea** by the initial **sc** (see 91), and was then umlauted to **ie**.

⁷¹ This form is irregular; we should have **scieþþan** from ***skapjanan**, just as we have **scieppan** from ***skapjanan**.

⁷² For the preservation of **j** see 145.

⁷³ Note the absence of umlaut in the past participle of these verbs.

⁷⁴ Note the absence of umlaut in the past participle of these verbs.

⁷⁵ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above.

⁷⁶ This form is from Prehistoric OE ***scæpen**, the **æ** being diphthongised to **ea** by the initial **sc** (see 91).

⁷⁷ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above

151. **Numerals.** The ordinal numerals (e.g., **forma**, *first*, **þrida**, *third*) are declined like weak adjectives.⁷⁸ Of the cardinal numbers, only the first three are regularly declined.

- (1) **ān**, *one*, is declined like a strong adjective, but has either **āne** or **ænne** in the masculine accusative singular and either **āne** or **æne** in the masculine and neuter instrumental singular.

- (2) The declension of **twēgen**, *two*, is as follows:

Plur.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom., Acc.	twēgen	twā	tū, twā
Gen.	twēga, twēgra	twēga, twēgra	twēga, twēgra
Dat., Inst.	twām, twām	twām, twām	twām, twām

- (3) The declension of **þrie**, *three*, is as follows:

Plur.	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom., Acc.	þrie	þrēo	þrēo
Gen.	þrēora	þrēora	þrēora
Dat., Inst.	þrim	þrim	þrim

The other cardinal numbers are generally not inflected. They are chiefly used either as indeclinable adjectives or as nouns governing the genitive; for example, **on fif dagum**, *in five days*; **þrītiġ daga**, *thirty days*.

For further information in regard to the numerals see the Reference Grammar (370-374.)

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

152. Hēo **þā swiðe bliðe ūt ēode and cwæð**, “**Lārēow Apoloni, ic ġiefe þē be mīnes fæder lēafe twā hund punda goldes ond fēower hund punda ġewihte seolfres ond þone mæstan dæl dēorweorðes rēafes ond twēntiġ ðēowra monna.**” And

⁷⁸ Except **ōðer**, *second*.

hēo þā þus cwæð tō ðām þēowum mannum, “Berað þās þing mid ēow þe ic behēt Apollonio, mīnum lārēowe, ond lecað innan būre beforan mīnum frēondum.” Þis wearð þā þus ġedōn æfter þære cwēne hāse, ond ealle þā menn hire ġiefa heredon ðe hīe ġesāwon. Ðā sōðlice ġeendode sē ġebēorscipe, ond þā menn ealle ārison and grētton þone cyning ond ða cwēne ond bādon hīe ġesunde bēon and hām ġewendon. Ēac swelce Apollonius cwæð, “Ðū gōda cyning ond earmra ġemiltsiend ond þū cwēn lāre lufiend, bēon ġē ġesunde.” Hē beseah ēac tō ðām þēowum monnum þe þæt mægden him forġiefen hæfde ond him cwæð tō, “Nimað þās þing mid ēow þe mē sēo cwēn forġeaf, and gān wē sēcan ūre ġiesthūs þæt wē magon ūs ġerestan.” Ðā ondrēd þæt mægden þæt hēo nāfre eft Apollonium ne ġesāwe swā hræðe swā hēo wolde ond ēode þā tō hire fæder and cwæð, “Ðū gōda cyning, līcað ðē wel þæt Apollonius, þe þurh ūs tōdæg ġegōdod is, þus heonon fare, ond cumen yfele menn ond berēafien hine?” Sē cyning cwæð, “Wel þū cwæde. Hāt him findan hwær hē hine mæġe weorð-licost ġerestan.”

ġedōn, past participle of **ġedōn**.

gān, pres. subj. 1 person plural of **gān**.

gān . . . **sēcan**; **sēcan** is a complementary infinitive after a verb of motion to be translated usually by the present participle: *go* . . . *seeking*.

magon, pres. ind. 1 person plur. of **magan**.

ġesāwe, pret. subj. 3 person sing. of **ġesēon**.

berēafien, pres. subj. 3 person plur. of **berēafian**.

mæġe, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **magan**.

CHAPTER XX

WEAK VERBS: CLASSES II AND III

153. Weak Verbs: Class II. The weak verbs of Class II are easily recognised. They have **-ian**⁷⁹ in the infinitive, **-ode** in the preterit indicative first person singular, and **-od** in the past participle; the principal parts are as follows:

lufian, *love* **lufode** **lufod**

154. The full conjugation of weak verbs of Class II, exemplified by **lufian**, is as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present Sing. 1	lufie
2	lufast
3	lufaþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3	lufiaþ
Preterit Sing. 1	lufode
2	lufodeſt
3	lufode
Plur. 1, 2, 3	lufodon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	lufie
Plur. 1, 2, 3	lufien
Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	lufode
Plur. 1, 2, 3	lufoden

⁷⁹ This ending is also written **-iġan** and **-iġean**, but the sound is always that of **-ian**. The endings **-ian**, etc., of 2 weak verbs are to be distinguished from the **-ian**, etc., of 1 weak verbs. In **lufian** the ending **-ian** is two syllables; in **nerian** it is only one. The **i** which appears in the infinitive and other forms of the 2 weak verbs did not cause umlaut because it was not **i** but **ōj** at the time at which umlaut began to operate. This **ōj** then became **ēj** and subsequently **i**. See 434, 435.

IMPERATIVE

Present Sing. 2	lufa
Plur. 2	lufiaþ
Infinitive	lufian
Gerund	tō lufienne
Present Participle	lufiende
Past Participle	lufod

155. Weak Verbs: Class III. The third class of weak verbs was originally as definite in its characteristics as the other two classes. In Old English, however, only a very small number of verbs belong to this class, and these retain only in part the original features of the conjugation. See 436. The principal parts of the chief Old English verbs of Class III are:

habban, <i>have</i>	hæfde	hæfd
hycgan, <i>think</i>	hogde	hogod
libban, <i>live</i>	lifde	lifd
secgan, <i>say</i>	sægde	sægd

156. The early West-Saxon forms of **habban** and **libban** were as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present Sing. 1	hæbbe	libbe
2	hæfst, hafast	liofast
3	hæfþ, hafafþ	liofafþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3	hæbbaþ, habbaþ	libbaþ
Preterit Sing. 1	hæfde	lifde
2	hæfdest	lifdest
3	hæfde	lifde
Plur. 1, 2, 3	hæfdon	lifdon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	hæbbe	libbe
Plur. 1, 2, 3	hæbben	libben
Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	hæfde	lifde
Plur. 1, 2, 3	hæfden	lifden

IMPERATIVE

Present Sing. 2	hafa	liofa
Plur. 2	habbaþ	libbaþ
Infinitive	habban	libban
Gerund	tō habbenne	tō libbenne
Present Participle	hæbbende	libbende, lifende
Past Partiple	hæfd	lifd

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

157. Ðā dyde þæt mægden swā hire beboden wæs, ond Apollonius onfēng þære wununge ðe him gētāht wæs ond ðær in ēode Gode þonciende ðe him ne forwiernde cynelices weorðscipes and fēfres. Ac þæt mægden hæfde unstillle niht mid þære lufe onæled þāra worda and sanga þe hēo gehierde æt Apollonie, ond nā leng hēo ne gebād ðonne hit dæg wæs, ac ēode sōna swā hit lēoht wæs and gesæt beforan hire fæder bedde. Ðā cwæð sē cyning, “Lēofe dohtor, for hwȳ eart ðū þus ærwacol?” Ðæt mægden cwæð, “Mē āweahton þā gecneordnessa þe ic giestrandæg gehierde. Nū bidde ic ðē for ðām þæt þū befæste mē ūrum cuman Apollonie tō lāre.” Ðā wearð sē cyning þearle geblissod ond hēt feccan Apollonium ond him tō cwæð, “Mīn dohtor giernð þæt hēo mōte leornian æt ðē ðā gesæligan lāre ðe þū canst, and gif ðū wilt þisum þingum gehiersum bēon, ic swerie ðē þurh mīnes rīces mægenu þæt swā hwæt swā ðū on sē forlure ic ðē þæt on lande gēstaðelie.” Ðā ðā Apollonius þæt gehierde, hē onfēng þām mægdene tō lāre ond hire tāhte swā wel swā hē self geleornode.

onfēng, forwiernde, note that these verbs take the dat. and gen. respectively, instead of the accusative.

mōte, pres. subj. 3 person sing. of **mōtan**.

canst, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of **cunnan**.

CHAPTER XXI

ANOMALOUS VERBS; u-DECLENSION

158. The conjugation of **bēon**, *be*, is as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present Sing. 1	eom	bēo
2	eart	bist
3	is	biþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3.	sindon, sind, sint	bēoþ

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	sie	bēo
Plur. 1, 2, 3	sien	bēon

IMPERATIVE

Present Sing. 2	bēo
Plur. 2	bēoþ
Infinitive	bēon
Gerund	tō bēonne
Present Participle	bēonde

The preterit forms are supplied by the strong verb **wesan**, *be*:

INDICATIVE

Preterit Sing. 1	wæs
2	wære ⁸⁰
3	wæs
Plur. 1, 2, 3	wæron

SUBJUNCTIVE

Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	wære
Plur. 1, 2, 3	wæren ⁸¹

⁸⁰ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above.

⁸¹ **wesan** is also used in the present indicative, present subjunctive, imperative, and present participle; when so used it is conjugated like a strong verb of Class V.

159. The conjugation of **dōn**, *do*, is as follows:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present Sing. 1	dō	Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	dō
2	dēst		
3	dēþ		
Plur. 1, 2, 3,	dōþ	Plur. 1, 2, 3	dōn
Preterit Sing. 1	dyde	Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	dyde
2	dydest		
3	dyde		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	dydon	Plur. 1, 2, 3	dyden
IMPERATIVE			
Present Sing. 2	dō		
Plur. 2	dōþ		
Infinitive	dōn		
Gerund	tō dōnne		
Present Participle	dōnde		
Past Participle	dōn		

160. The forms that serve as the preterit indicative and subjunctive of **gān**, *go*, are from a root which is different from that of the infinitive and present forms. The conjugation is as follows:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present Sing. 1	gā	Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	gā
2	gāest		
3	gāþ		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	gāþ	Plur. 1, 2, 3	gān
Preterit Sing. 1	ēode	Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	ēode
2	ēodest		
3	ēode		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	ēodon	Plur. 1, 2, 3	ēoden
IMPERATIVE			
Present Sing. 2	gā		
Plur. 2	gāþ		
Infinitive	gān		
Gerund	tō gānne		
Present Participle	(gāgende) ⁸²		
Past Participle	gān		

⁸² **gānde**, the present participle of **gān**, does not occur in West-Saxon, and its place is supplied by the present participle of **gangan**, a strong verb of Class VII.

161. The conjugation of **willan**, *will*, is as follows:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present Sing. 1	wille	Present Sing. 1, 2, 3	wille
2	wilt		
3	wile		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	willaþ	Plur. 1, 2, 3	willen
Preterit Sing. 1	wolde	Preterit Sing. 1, 2, 3	wolde
2	woldest		
3	wolde		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	woldon	Plur. 1, 2, 3	wolden
	Infinitive		willan
	Gerund		tō willenne
	Present Participle		willende

162. **Contraction.** The various forms of **willan** often undergo contraction with the preceding negative **ne**, *not*; **ne wile**, for example, contracts to **nile** (also **nyle** or **nele**); **ne wolde** contracts to **nolde**. Contraction with **ne** is likewise undergone by those forms of **bēon** which begin with a vowel, by the various forms of **wesan**, and by the various forms of **habban**; **ne is**, for example, contracts to **nis**, **ne wæs** to **næs**, and **ne habbaþ** to **nabbaþ**.

163. **u-Declension.** The u-declension is that according to which are declined all masculine and a few feminine nouns which end in **-u**.⁸³

⁸³ All of these nouns have short stems, the final **u** having been lost in nouns with long stems, just as it was lost in the Nom.-Acc. Plur. of long-stemmed nouns of the neuter **a**-declension and in the Nom. Sing. of long-stemmed nouns of the feminine **ō**-declension (see 48, 55). Long-stemmed nouns of the **u**-declension for the most part went over to the masculine **a**- and feminine **ō**-declensions, but a few nouns retain forms belonging to the **u**-declension. For example, **feld**, *field*, (masculine) has the endings of either the **u**-declension or the masculine **a**-declension:

Sing. Nom.	feld	Plur. Nom., Acc.	felda, feldas
Gen.	felda, feldes	Gen.	felda

164. Paradigms of **sunu**, *son*, (masculine), and **duru**, *door*, (feminine):

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	sunu	duru	Nom., Acc.	sunu	duru
Gen.	sunu	duru	Gen.	sunu	duru
Dat.	sunu	duru	Dat., Inst.	sunum	durum
Acc.	sunu	duru			
Inst.	sunu	duru			

READING

happened Apollonius of Tyre

165. Hit gēlamp ^{happened} ðā ^{that} after þissum; binnan fēawum tīdum ^{leaf} þæt Arcestrates sē cynig hēold Apollonius hond on honda and ēodon swā ūt on ðāre čeastre strāte. þā at nīehstān cōmon ^{not from} ðār gān ongēan hīe þrīe gēlārede weras ond æpelborene þā longe ār giernon þās cyniges dohtor. Hīe ðā tealle þrīe tōgādere ānre stefne grētton ðone cynig. Ðā smearcode sē ^{smiled} cynig and him tō beseah and þus cwæð, "Hwæt is þæt, þæt gē ^{what does this mean} mē ānre stefne grētton?" Ðā andswarode heora ān and cwæð ^{asked formerly} "Wē bædon gefyrn þinre dohtor, ond þū ūs oftrædliče ^{asked frequently} mid elcunge geswenetest. For ðām wē cōmon hider tōdæg þus tōgādere. Wē sindon þine čeastergewaran of æðelum gebyr-dum geborene; nū bidde wē þē þæt þū gecēose þē ānne of ūs þrim, hwelcne þū wille þē tō ādume ha**b**ban." Ðā cwæð sē cynig, "Næbbe gē nā gōdne timan āredodne; min dohtor is nū swīðe bisig ymbe hire leornunge. Ac, þē lās þe ic ēow ā leng slacite, āwritað ēowere noman on gewrite ond hire mor-gengiefe. þonne āsende ic þā gewritu minre dehtor þæt hēo

Dat. **felda, felde**
Acc. **feld**
Inst. **felda, felde**

Dat., Inst. **feldum**

Of the long-stemmed feminines which retain forms belonging to the **u**-declension, **hand** is the most important example.

self ġeċēose hwelcne ēower hēo wille." Ðā dydon ðā cnihtas swā, ond sē cyning nam ðā ġewritu and ġeinseġlode hīe mid his hringe and sealde Apollonio þus cweðende, "Nim nū, lārēow Apolloni, ^{if} swā hit þē ne ^{displeas} mīslīcīe, ond bring þīnum lāring-mæġdene." Ðā nam Apollonius þā ġewritu and ēode tō ðære cynelīcan healle.

cōmon . . . gān; **gān** is a complementary infinitive after a verb of motion:
came . . . walking.

dehtor, dat. sing. of **dohtor** (see 335).

bidde wē, næbbe ġē; when the plural pronoun subjects **wē** or **ġē** immediately follow the verb, the ending **-e** is often used instead of the regular plural endings **-aþ** or **-on**. }

ēower; the MS has **ēowerne**.

CHAPTER XXII

MINOR NOUN DECLENSIONS

166. man-Declension. The **man**-declension is that according to which are declined a small but important group of masculine and feminine nouns most of which are monosyllables ending in a consonant. The distinctive feature of this declension is that the dative singular and nominative plural are without endings but have umlaut of the vowel of the stem; the umlaut is the result of the fact that the Germanic endings in the dative singular and nominative plural were **-i* and **-iz*.

167. Paradigms of **mann** (**monn**), *man*, and **fōt**, *foot*, (masculine); and **bōc**, *book*, and **burg**, *city*, (feminine):

Sing. Nom.	mann	fōt	bōc	burg
Gen.	mannes	fōtes	bēc, bōce	byrg, byriġ
Dat.	<u>menn</u>	<u>fēt</u>	bēc	byrg, byriġ
Acc.	mann	fōt	bōc	burg
Inst.	<u>menn</u>	<u>fēt</u>	bēc	byrg, byriġ
Plur. Nom., Acc.	<u>menn</u>	<u>fēt</u>	bēc	byrg, byriġ
Gen.	manna	fōta	bōca	burga
Dat., Inst.	mannum	fōtum	bōcum	burgum

Other nouns belonging to this declension are **tōþ**, *tooth*, plural **tēþ**, (masculine), and **gōs**, *goose*, plural **gēs**, (feminine).

168. nd-Declension. The **nd**-declension is that according to which are declined present participles used as nouns; they are of the masculine gender and always end in **-nd**. This declension is similar in its characteristics to the **man**-declension.

169. Paradigms of *frēond*, *friend*, and *hettend*, *enemy*:

Sing. Nom.	frēond	hettend
Gen.	frēondes	hettendes
Dat.	frīend	hettende
Acc.	frēond	hettend
Inst.	frīend	hettende
Plur. Nom., Acc.	frīend	hettend
Gen.	frēonda	hettendra ⁸⁴
Dat., Inst.	frēondum	hettendum

170. **r-Declension.** The **r**-declension is that according to which are declined the nouns of relationship ending in **-r**: *fæder*, *father*, *brōðor*, *brother*, (masculine); and *mōdor*, *mother*, *dohtor*, *daughter*, *sweostor*, *sister*, (feminine).

171. Paradigms of *fæder*, *brōðor*, and *sweostor*:

Sing. Nom.	fæder	brōðor	sweostor
Gen.	fæder	brōðor	sweostor
Dat.	fæder	brēðer	sweostor
Acc.	fæder	brōðor	sweostor
Inst.	fæder	brēðer	sweostor
Plur. Nom., Acc.	fæderas	brōðor	sweostor
Gen.	fædera	brōðra	sweostra
Dat., Inst.	fæderum	brōðrum	sweostrum

172. A few neuter nouns, chiefly **lamb** (**lomb**), *lamb*, **cealf**, *calf*, **æġ**, *egg*, and (sometimes) **cild**, *child*, have preceding the endings in the plural an r which does not appear in the singular.

173. Paradigm of *lamb*:

Sing. Nom.	lamb	Plur. Nom., Acc.	lambru
Gen.	lambes	Gen.	lambra
Dat.	lambe	Dat., Inst.	lambrum
Acc.	lamb		
Inst.	lambe		

⁸⁴ The ending **-ra** of the genitive plural is from the adjective declension.

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

174. Mid þām þe þæt mægden geseah Apollonium, þā cwæð hēo, "Lārēow, hwȳ gæst ðū āna?" Apollonius cwæð, "Hlāfdiġe, . . . nim ðās ġewritu ðe þīn fæder þe sende ond ræd." Ðæt mægden nam ond rædde þāra þrēora cnihta naman, ac hēo ne funde nā þone noman þæron þe hēo wolde. Ðā hēo þā ġewritu oferrædd hæfde, ðā beseah hēo tō Apollonio and cwæð, "Lārēow, ne ofþyncð hit ðē ġif ic þus wer ġeġēose?" Apollonius cwæð, "Nā, ac ic blissie swīðor ðæt þū meahht ðurh ðā lāre þe þū æt mē underfēnge þe self on ġewrite ġecȳðan hwelcne heora þū wille. Mīn willa is þæt þū ðē wer ġeġēose þær ðū self wille." Þæt mægden cwæð, "Ēalā lārēow, ġif ðū mē lufodest, þū hit besorgodest." Æfter þissum wordum hēo mid mōdes ānrædnesse āwrāt oðer ġewrit ond þæt ġeinseġlode and sealde Apollonio. Apollonius hit þā ūt bær on ðā stræte ond sealde þām cyninge. Ðæt ġewrit wæs þus ġewriten: "þū gōda cyning and mīn sē lēofosta fæder, nū þīn mildheortnes mē lēafe sealde þæt ic self mōste cēosan hwelcne wer ic wolde, ic secge ðē tō sōðe, þone forlidenan monn ic wille. And ġif ðū wundrie þæt swā scamfæst fæmne swā unforwandiendlice ðās word āwrāt, þonne wite þū þæt ic hæbbe þurh weax āboden, ðe nāne scame ne conn, þæt ic self ðē for scame secgan ne mihte."

hlāfdiġe, . . . ; the words that follow hlāfdiġe in the MS (næs ġit yfel wif) are unintelligible.

funde, a weak preterit of findan.

meahht, pres. ind. 2 person sing. of magan.

wite, imp. 2 sing. of witan.

conn, pres. ind. 3 person sing. of cunnan.

CHAPTER XXIII

PRETERITIVE-PRESENT VERBS

175. The preteritive-present verbs, or strong-weak verbs, which are a feature of all the Germanic languages, are so called because their present indicative and subjunctive forms were originally the preterit indicative and subjunctive of strong verbs. These old preterits acquired a present meaning, the old presents were lost, and new weak preterits were formed on the basis of the stem of the present (originally preterit) indicative plural. Upon the basis of the present indicative plural stem were also made new forms for the imperative, infinitive, gerund, and present participle. For example, **man** (**mon**) and **munon** were originally the preterit indicative 1 and 3 singular and preterit indicative plural of a strong verb meaning *remember*; their meaning changed from preterit to present; and a new weak preterit indicative 1 and 3 singular **munde** was formed from the stem of **munon**. The principal parts of these verbs are: (1) the infinitive, (2) the present indicative third person singular, (3) the present indicative plural, and (4) the preterit indicative third person singular. The verbs, with their principal parts, are as follows:

āgan , <i>possess</i>	āh	āgon	āhte
cunnan , <i>know, be able</i>	cann , <i>conn</i>	cunnon	cūðe
dugan , <i>avail</i>	dēag	dugon	dohte
durran , <i>dare</i>	dēarr	durron	dorste
magan , <i>be able</i>	mæġ	magon	meahte , <i>mihte</i>
mōtan , <i>be permitted</i>	mōt	mōton	mōste
munan , <i>remember</i>	man , <i>m</i>	munon , <i>munap</i>	munde
(ġe)nugan , <i>suffice</i>	neah	nugon	nohte

sculan , <i>be under obligation</i>	sceal	sculon	scolde, sceolde
ðurfan , <i>need</i>	ðearf	ðurfon	ðorfte
unnan , <i>grant</i>	ann, onn	unnon	ūðe
witan , <i>know</i>	wāt ⁸⁵	witon	wisse, wiste ⁸⁶

176. The most important of these verbs are **āgan**, **cunnan**, **magan**, **mōtan**, **sculan**, and **witan**. The first of these has become the Modern English verb *owe*; **cunnan**, **magan**, **mōtan**, and **sculan** survive (with more or less change of meaning) in Modern English *can*, *may*, *must*, and *shall*; **witan** survives in (archaic) Modern English *wot*.

177. With regard to the conjugation of the preteritive-present verbs the following points should be noted:

- (1) The present indicative is conjugated like the preterit indicative of strong verbs, except that the second person singular is formed from the singular, not the plural, stem, and that it has the old ending **-t** (or **-st**) instead of **-e**.
- (2) The preterit indicative has the endings of the preterit indicative of weak verbs.
- (3) The subjunctive has the regular endings, **-e** in the singular and **-en** in the plural, but the present subjunctive frequently has umlaut of the vowel of the stem.
- (4) The past participle has the strong ending **-en**.

⁸⁵ Negative forms (contracted with **ne**) are **nāt**, **nyton**, **niste**, etc.

⁸⁶ In this list the verbs are given, for convenience of reference, in alphabetical order, but they are usually classified according to the class of strong verbs to which they originally belonged; this classification is as follows:

Class	I	witan, āgan
	II	dugan
	III	cunnan, durrān, ðurfān, unnan
	IV	munan, sculan
	V	magan, nugan
	VI	mōtan

178. Synopsis of the conjugation of the preteritive-present verbs:⁸⁷

Pres. Ind. Sing. 1	āh	cann,	dēag	dearr
		conn		
2	āhst	canst		dearst
3	āh	cann,	dēag	dearr
		conn		
Plur. 1, 2, 3	āgon	cunnon	dugon	durron
Pret. Ind. Sing. 3	āhte	cūðe	dohte	dorste
Pres. Subj. Sing.	āge	cunne	duge, dyge	durre,
				dyrrre
Infinitive	āgan	cunnan	dugan	durran
Present Participle			dugende	
Past Participle	āgen, ægen	cunnen		
Pres. Ind. Sing. 1	mæġ	mōt	man, mon	
2	meaht	mōst	manst, monst	
3	mæġ	mōt	man, mon	neah
Plur. 1, 2, 3	magon	mōton	munon, munap	nugon
Pret. Ind. Sing. 3	meahte, mihte	mōste	munde	nohte
Pres. Subj. Sing.	mæge	mōte	mune, myne	nuge
Infinitive	magan	mōtan	munan	nugan
Present Participle			munende	
Past Participle			munen	
Pres. Ind. Sing. 1	sceal	ðearf	ann, onn	wāt
2	scealt	ðearft		wāst
3	sceal	ðearf	ann, onn	wāt
Plur. 1, 2, 3	sculon	ðurfon	unnon	witon
Pret. Ind. Sing. 3	scolde, sceolde	ðorfte	ūðe	wisse,
				wiste

⁸⁷ A blank space in the synopsis indicates that the form belonging in this space does not occur. The infinitives **durran**, **mōtan**, and **nugan** do not occur, but their forms can be inferred with tolerable certainty and are convenient for purposes of reference.

Pres. Subj. Sing.	scule, scyle	ðurfe,	unne	wite
		ðyrfe		
Infinitive	sculan	ðurfan	unnan	witan
Present Participle		ðearfende		witende
Past Participle			unnen	witen

The imperative forms that occur are: **āge; mun (mune, myne), munah; unne; wite, witaþ.**

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

179. Ðā ðā sē cyning hæfde þæt ġewrit oferrædd, þā niste hē hwelcne forlidenne hēo nemde, beseah ðā tō ðām þrim cnihtum ond cwæð, "Hwelc ēower is forliden?" Ðā cwæð heora ān, sē hātte Ardalius, "Ic eom forliden." Sē oðer him andwyrdde and cwæð, "Swīga ðū! *Ādl þe fornime, þæt þū ne bēo hāl nē ġesund! Mid mē þū bōccraeft leornodest, ond ðū nāfre būton þære ceastre ġeate from mē ne cōme. Hwær ġefōre ðū forlidennesses?" Mid ðy þe sē cyning ne meahte findan hwelc heora forliden wære, hē beseah tō Apollonio and cwæð, "Nim ðū, Apolloni, þis ġewrit ond ræd hit. Eāðe mæg ġeweorðan þæt þū wite þæt ic nāt, ðū ðe þær ondweard wære." Ðā nam Apollonius þæt ġewrit and rædde, and sōna swā hē onġeat þæt hē ġelufod wæs from ðām mægdene his ondwlita eall ārēodode. Ðā sē cyning þæt ġeseah, þā nam hē Apollonies hand ond hine hwōn fram þām cnihtum ġewende and cwæð, "Wāst þū þone forlidenan monn?" Apollonius cwæð, "Ðū gōda cyning, ġif þīn willa bið, ic hine wāt." Ðā ġeseah sē cyning þæt Apollonius mid rosan rude wæs eall oferbræded, þā onġeat hē þone cwide and þus cwæð tō him, "Blissa, blissa, Apolloni, for ðām þe mīn dohtor ġewilnað þæs ðe mīn willa is. Ne mæg soðlice on þyllcium þingum nān þing ġeweorðan būton Godes willan." Arcestrates beseah tō ðām þrim cnihtum and cwæð, "Sōð is þæt ic ēow ær sægde, þæt ġe ne cōmon on ġedafen-

* - q - Plague take you!

licre tīde mīnre dohtor tō biddenne; ac þonne hēo mæg hī fram hire
lāre geāmettigian, þonne sende ic ēow word.” Ðā gewendon
h̄e hām mid þisse ondsware.

hätte, *was named*; this form and the corresponding plural **hätton** are the only traces in Old English of the Germanic passive voice.

CHAPTER XXIV

CONTRACT VERBS

REVIEW OF SOUND CHANGES

180. About the beginning of the historical period of Old English and after the period of **i**-umlaut, intervocalic **h** was lost and the two vowels (or diphthong and vowel) thus brought together contracted into a single long vowel or long diphthong.

(As a result of these changes, irregularities arose in those strong verbs whose stems ended in **-h**. The principal parts of the most important of these verbs (which are known as Contract Verbs) are as follows:

Class I					
ðēon , <i>thrive</i>	from Prehistoric OE	*ðīhan	ðāh	ðigon ⁸⁸	ðiġen
wrēon , <i>cover</i>	"	"	*wrihan	wrāh	wrigon ⁸⁸
Class II					
flēon , <i>flee</i>	"	"	*flēohan	flēah	flugon ⁸⁸
tēon , <i>draw</i>	"	"	*tēohan	tēah	tugon ⁸⁸
Class III					
fēolan , <i>reach</i>	"	"	*felhan ⁸⁹	fealh	fulgon ⁸⁸
Class V					
fēon , <i>rejoice</i>	"	"	*fehan	feah	fægon ⁸⁸
sēon , <i>see</i>	"	"	*sehan	seah	sāwon

⁸⁸ Observe the grammatical change in this verb, and compare note 32 above.

⁸⁹ ***felhan** became ***feolhan** by breaking of **e** before **lh**; **h** was then lost, and **eo** was lengthened to **ēo**. The loss of **h** between **l** or **r** and a vowel, with lengthening of the preceding vowel or diphthong, occurred regularly in Prehistoric OE; for example, **seolh**, *seal*, has as its genitive singular **sēoles**, and **mearh**, *horse*, has as its genitive singular **mēares**.

Class VI

slēan , <i>strike</i>	from Prehistoric OE	*slæhan	slōg	slōgon ⁹⁰	slagen
ðwēan , <i>wash</i>	“ “ “	*ðwæhan	ðwōg	ðwōgon ⁹⁰	ðwagen

Class VII

fōn , <i>seize</i>	“ “ “	*fōhan ⁹¹	fēng	fēngon ⁹⁰	fangen fongen
hōn , <i>hang</i>	“ “ “	*hōhan ⁹²	hēng	hēngon ⁹⁰	hangen hongen

181. Because of the resemblance in the infinitive between the contract verbs of Class I and those of Class II, **ðēon** and **wrēon** of Class I often formed their preterit and past participle after the analogy of **flēon** and **tēon** of Class II; the principal parts of **ðēon**, *thrive*, and **wrēon**, *cover*, according to Class II are:

ðēon	ðēah	ðugon	ðogen ⁹³
wrēon	wrēah	wrugon	wrogen

182. The irregularities of the contract verbs are confined to the present forms; thruout the rest of the conjugation they are inflected like other strong verbs of their respective classes.

⁹⁰ Observe the grammatical change in this verb. The preterit singular has come to have the same consonant as the plural thru analogy.

⁹¹ This form developed regularly out of Primitive Germanic ***fanhanan**; the **n** which was lost in the radical syllable of the infinitive and present is preserved in the preterit and past participle.

⁹² This form developed regularly out of Primitive Germanic ***hanhanan**; the **n** which was lost in the radical syllable of the infinitive and present is preserved in the preterit and past participle.

⁹³ **ðēon** was Primitive Germanic ***ðēnhanan**, a strong verb of Class III, which developed regularly into Prehistoric OE ***ðihan**. Because of its resemblance to **bīdan**, etc., ***ðihan** went over to Class I. But some of the old forms according to Class III still remained in use, so that we have, in addition to the forms according to Classes I and II (see 181) the preterit plural **ðungon** and the past participle **ðungen** according to Class III.

The contract verbs, exemplified by **ðēon**, **flēon**, **sēon**, **slēan**, and **fōn**, are inflected in the present as follows:

INDICATIVE

Pres. Sing. 1	ðēo	flēo	sēo	slēa	fō
2	ðiehst	fliehst	siehst	sliehst	fēhst
3	ðiehþ	fliehþ	siehþ	sliehþ	fēhþ
Plur. 1, 2, 3	ðēoþ	flēoþ	sēoþ	slēaþ	fōþ

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. Sing. 1, 2, 3	ðēo	flēo	sēo	slēa	fō
Plur. 1, 2, 3	ðēon	flēon	sēon	slēan	fōn

IMPERATIVE

Pres. Sing. 2	ðēoh	flēoh	seoh	sleah	fōh
Plur. 2	ðēoþ	flēoþ	sēoþ	slēaþ	fōþ
Infinitive	ðēon	flēon	sēon	slēan	fōn
Gerund	tō ðēonne	tō flēonne	tō sēonne	tō slēanne	tō fōnne
Pres. Participle	ðēonde	flēonde	sēonde	slēande	fōnde

183. The irregularities that we observe in the inflection of these verbs are the result of the regular operation of sound changes that we have already studied in preceding chapters. The operation of these sound changes may be shown by tracing the development of the infinitive and present indicative first, second, and third singular of each of the representative verbs whose inflection was given in the preceding paragraph.

- (1) The infinitive **ðēon** is from Prehistoric OE ***ðihan**. The **ī** was broken to **io** before **h** (see note 28 above), resulting in ***ðiohan**; then, after the loss of intervocalic **h**, the diphthong **io** absorbed the vowel of the following syllable, giving the form **ðion**, later **ðēon**.

The present indicative first singular **ðēo** is from Prehistoric OE ***ðihu**. The **ī** was broken to **io** before **h**, resulting in ***ðiohu**; then, after the loss of intervocalic **h**, the diphthong **io** absorbed the vowel of the following syllable, giving the form **ðio**, later **ðēo**.

The present indicative second and third singular **ðiehst** and **ðiehþ** are from Prehistoric OE ***ðihis** and ***ðihīþ**, which, by breaking of **i**, became ***ðiohis** and ***ðiohīþ**, and then, by **i**-umlaut, ***ðiehis** and ***ðiehīþ**. The syncopation, *which was earlier than the loss of intervocalic h*, resulted in the forms **ðiehs(t)** and **ðiehþ**.

- (2) The infinitive **flēon** and the present indicative first singular **flēo** are from Prehistoric OE ***flēohan** and ***flēohu**, which, after the loss of intervocalic **h**, contracted into **flēon** and **flēo**.

The present indicative second and third singular **fliehst** and **fliehþ** are from Prehistoric OE ***fliohis** and ***fliohīþ**,⁹⁴ which by **i**-umlaut became ***fliehis** and ***fliehīþ** and then, by syncopation, **fliehs(t)** and **fliehþ**.

- (3) The infinitive **sēon** and the present indicative first singular **sēo** are from Prehistoric OE ***sehan** and ***sehu**; the breaking of **e** to **eo** before **h** resulted in ***seohan** and ***seohu**, which after the loss of intervocalic **h** contracted into **sēon** and **sēo**, the short **eo** being lengthened by its absorption of the vowel of the following syllable.

The present indicative second and third singular **siehst** and **siehþ** are from Prehistoric OE ***sihis** and ***sihīþ** (from Primitive Germanic ***sehis** and ***sehīþ**, see note 45 above). The **i** was broken to **io**, resulting in ***siohis** and ***siohīþ**, which were first umlauted to ***siehis** and ***siehīþ** and then, before the loss of intervocalic **h**, syncopated to **siehs(t)** and **siehþ**.

- (4) The infinitive and present indicative first singular **slēan** and **slēa** are from Prehistoric OE ***slæhan** (from older ***slahan**) and ***slæhu** (from older ***slahu**). The

⁹⁴ For the interchange between **ēo** and **io** in Prehistoric OE see note 48 above.

æ was broken to **ea**, resulting in ***sleahan** and ***sleahu**, which after loss of intervocalic **h** contracted into **slēan** and **slēa**, the short **ea** being lengthened by its absorption of the vowel of the following syllable.

The present indicative second and third singular **sliehst** and **sliehþ** are from Prehistoric OE ***slæhis** and ***slæhiþ** (from older ***slahis** and ***slahiþ**). The æ was broken to **ea**, resulting in ***sleahis** and ***sleahiþ**, which were first umlauted to ***sliehis** and ***sliehiþ** and then, before the loss of intervocalic **h**, syncopated to **sliehs(t)** and **sliehþ**.

- (5) The infinitive and present indicative singular **fōn** and **fō** are from Prehistoric OE ***fōhan** and ***fōhu**, which, after loss of intervocalic **h**, contracted into **fōn** and **fō**.

The present indicative second and third singular **fēhst** and **fēhþ** are from Prehistoric OE ***fōhis** and ***fōhiþ**, which were first umlauted to ***fēhis** and ***fēhiþ** and then, before the loss of intervocalic **h**, syncopated to **fēhs(t)** and **fēhþ**.

184. Chronology of Sound Changes. The sound changes which have been dealt with in this and the preceding chapters occurred in the following chronological order:

- Primitive Germanic Period: 1. Umlaut of **e** to **i** (note 45) and of **eu** to **iū**ⁱ⁹ (note 48).
 2. Change of **e** to **i** before a double nasal or a nasal plus another consonant (102).
- West Germanic Period: Geminatio (117, 118).
- Old English Period: 1. Change of **a** to **æ** or **o** (80-82).
 2. Breaking (85, 86).
 3. Diphthongisation by initial palatals (91, 92).
 4. (**i**-)Umlaut (119-122).

5. Loss of final **i** and **u** after long syllables (48, 55, 121).
6. Syncopation (124, 135, 144, 58ff) and loss of medial **j** (121).
7. Change of unstressed **i** to **e** (121). — *exp*
8. Loss of intervocalic **h** (180) (183).
9. Change of **io**, **io** to **ēo**, **eo** (234; note 34, p. 125).

185.⁹⁵ Convert the following Primitive Germanic forms ✓
into the OE forms that would occur in the language of the
year 900: *et* *þæt* *þæt*

*werpiþ	*satjan(an)	*teuhan(an)	*tūnjan(an)
*setjan(an) ⁹⁶	*sehiþ	*farjan(an)	*framjan(an) <i>omit</i>
*felhiþ	*teuhiþ	*fleutan(an)	*dōmjan(an)
*fleutiþ	*bendan(an)	*stapjan(an)	*fulljan(an)

Convert the following Prehistoric OE forms into the forms
that would occur in the language of the year 900: ✓

*faht	*ēacjan	*dōmide	*halp
*cæce	*gæton	*fiohiþ	*mahte
*lārjan	*langira	*sihiþ	*gær
*gellan	*slahan	*manni	*fehtan
*swarjan	*sceran	*dōmiþ	*ahta
*hugi	*gall ⁹⁷	*sōcjan	*sceld
*girnja n	*hāljan	*falh	*bragd ⁹⁷

⁹⁵ These exercises may be used as material for a review of OE phonology. In working out the forms the student should observe carefully the chronology of the changes and should refer when necessary to the appropriate places in the book for information as to the precise conditions under which the changes took place.

⁹⁶ The letters in parentheses represent a syllable that was lost, in all probability, before the end of the Germanic period.

⁹⁷ The **g** in this word was a back **g** in the earliest stage of Prehistoric OE. But after the vowel **a** changed to **æ**, the **g** was palatalised, that is fronted, and became **ġ**.

*hōhiþ	*scarpjan	*selh	*slaġi
*slahiþ	*talde	*bergan	*cumih
*sah	*felhan	*ġæfon	*tācjan
*wahsan	*þwahu	*band	*sehu
*scæp	*werpan	*brūdi	*feh
*gald ⁹⁷	*fallan	*fallih	*caif ⁹⁸
*hwarfjan	*caster ⁹⁸	*framih	*ġefan
*agi	*ġeldan	*þaht	*walmi
*framide	*bōci	*hōhan	*scal
*fleohan	*gard ⁹⁷	*narid	*aldira
*sehan	*bandjan	*þihan	*þihih
*gaf ⁹⁷	*huldi	*wrēohu	*aldista
*morgin	*wirþih	*starf	*sculdig

READING

Apollonius of Tyre

186. And Arcestrates sē cyning hēold forð on Apollonius hond ond hine lādde hām mid him, nā swelce hē cuma wære ac swelce hē his āðum wære. Ðā æt nīehstan forlēt sē cyning Apollonius hand ond ēode āna intō ðām būre þær his dohtor inne wæs, and þus cwæð, “Lēofe dohtor, hwone hafast þū ðē ġecoren tō ġemæccan?” Ðæt mægden þā fēoll tō hire fæder fōtum ond cwæð, “Ðū ārfæsta fæder, ġehīer þīnre dohtor willan. Ic lufie þone forlidenan mann ðe wæs þurh unġelimp beswicen. Ac þy lās þe þe twēonie þære sprāce, Apollonium ic wille, mīnne lārēow, ond ġif þū mē him ne selest, þū forlætst ðīne dohtor.” Sē cyning ðā sōðlice ne meahte āræfnan his dohtor tēaras, ac ārærde hīe ūp and hire tō cwæð, “Lēofe dohtor, ne

⁹⁸ The *c* in this word was a back *c* in the earliest stage of Prehistoric OE. But after the vowel *a* changed to *æ*, the *c* was palatalised, that is fronted, and became *ċ*. The *ċ* was at first a stop consonant similar to the *k* of *kid* but with the stoppage made considerably farther forward in the mouth. Later, however, this sound changed to that of *ch* in *church*. We cannot be certain as to the exact date at which this further change took place but it had probably occurred before 900.

ondræd þū ðē æniges þinges. Þū hafast ġecoren þone wer þe mē wel līcað." Hē ēode ðā ūt and beseah tō Apollonio ond cwæð, "Lārēow Apolloni, ic smēade mīnre dohtor mōdes willan; ðā āreahte hēo mē mid wōpe betweox ððre spræce þasīping þus cweðende, 'þū ġeswōre Apollonio, ġif hē wolde ġehīersuman mīnum willan on lāre, þæt þū woldest him ġeinnian swā hwæt swā sēo sē him ætbrægd. Nū for ðām þe hē ġehīersum wæs þīnre hāse and mīnum willan, ic fōr æfter him.' "

Hē eode; the word **Hē** is not in the MS.

At this point there is a great gap in the Old English version of the story of Apollonius; after the gap the story is resumed at a point not far from the end. In the Latin from which the Old English version was translated the rest of the story is as follows. After his marriage to the king's daughter Apollonius receives a message that Antiochus is dead and that the kingdom of Antioch is reserved for him. He, therefore, sets out with his wife for Antioch; during the voyage, however, she gives birth to a daughter and apparently dies. She is cast overboard in a chest and drifts to Ephesus, where she is found and resuscitated. She is then adopted as a daughter by the man who found her and becomes a priestess of Diana. Apollonius leaves his daughter, named Tharsia, at Tarsus with a friend Stranguillio and his wife to be educated. Stranguillio's wife, however, becomes jealous of her foster-daughter after a time and bribes a steward to kill her. But Tharsia is rescued from the steward by pirates, is taken to Mitylene and sold as a slave, and finally, after some distressing experiences, finds a protector in Athenagora, the prince of the city. When, after fourteen years, Apollonius returns to visit his daughter, he is told by Stranguillio and his wife that she is dead. Broken-hearted, he leaves Tarsus and is driven by a storm to Mitylene. There he finds Tharsia and after her marriage to Athenagora sets out with her and his son-in-law for his own land. Being warned, however, in a dream to go to Ephesus, he goes there and is rejoined to his wife. After visiting Antioch and Tyre, Apollonius goes to Tarsus and punishes Stranguillio and his wife for their treachery. After that he lives in prosperity and happiness to an advanced age.

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

PHONOLOGY

INDO-EUROPEAN, GERMANIC, WEST-GERMANIC, AND OLD ENGLISH SOUNDS

Prefatory Note. A brief survey of IE and Gmc sounds is prefixed to the more extensive treatment of WGmc and OE sounds, in order that serious students may more easily familiarize themselves with the phonological processes that preceded Prim OE. Undergraduate classes in OE may omit or merely read the earlier parts of the Phonology.

Abbreviations. The following terms frequently used in the Reference Grammar are referred to by means of the abbreviations in the accompanying parentheses:

1. Indo-European (IE), the hypothetically reconstructed parent language of Germanic, Latin, Greek, Sanscrit, etc.

2. Primitive Germanic (Prim Gmc), the hypothetically reconstructed parent language of the Germanic languages in its earliest period.

3. Germanic (Gmc), the same as the latter, at a period just before the separation of Gothic, Norse, and West Germanic.

4. West Germanic (WGmc), the hypothetically reconstructed parent language of Old High German, Old Saxon, Old Dutch, Old Frisian, and Old English.

5. Primitive Old English (Prim OE), the hypothetically reconstructed English language before, roughly, the year 500 A.D.

6. Prehistoric Old English (Prehist OE), the hypothetically reconstructed Old English language from about 500 to about 700, the latter being the date of the earliest MSS of OE.

203. IE Long Vowels in Prim Gmc.

(IE) (Prim Gmc)

1. **ā** became **ō** : Lat *māter*, OS *mōdar*, OE *mōdor*, *mother*.
2. **ē** “ **æ** : Lat *ēdi*, Goth *fr-ēt*, ON *āt*, OS *āt*, OHG *āz*, *he ate*.³
3. **ī** remained **ī** : Lat *su-inus* (adj.), *belonging to a pig*; Goth *sweins*⁴; OS, OHG, OE *swīn*, *swine*, *pig*.
4. **ō** remained **ō** : Gr (Doric), *pōs*, Goth *fōtu*, OE *fōt*, *foot*.
5. **ū** “ **ū** : Lat *sūs*; OHG, OE *sū*, *sow*, *pig*.

204. IE Diphthongs in Prim Gmc.

(IE) (Prim Gmc)

1. **ai** remained **ai** : Lat *aes*, Goth *áiƿ*, *brass*.
2. **ei** became **ī** : Gr *stéichō*, *I go*; Goth *steigan*, OS, OHG, OE *stīgan*, *go*.
3. **oi** became **ai**, thus falling together with original **ai**; Gr *oīde*; Goth *wáit*, *knows*.
4. **au** remained **au** : Lat *auris*, Goth *ausō*, *ear*.
5. **eu** “ **eu** : Gr *géuō*, *I give a taste of*; Goth *kīusan*,⁵ *choose*.
6. **ou** became **au**, thus falling together with original **au**: IE **róudhos*; Goth *rauƿs*, *red*.
7. **ēi** “ **ē**⁶ : IE **kēita*, OS, OE *hēt*, *I commanded*.

IE CONSONANTS IN Gmc

205. Grimm's Law.

IE **p, t, k**; **bh, dh, gh**; **b, d, g** changed to certain corresponding Gmc consonants.

³ Gmc **ā**, a long low front vowel, became **ē** in Goth, but became **ā** in NGmc and WGmc.

⁴ In Goth **ei** spells **ī**.

⁵ Gmc **eu** became Goth **iu**.

⁶ Gmc **ē** (IE **ēi**) is distinguished in NGmc and WGmc from Gmc **ā** (IE **ē**), but in Goth both **ē** and **ā** are spelled alike (**ē**).

1. **p** became **f**: Lat **piscis**, OE **fisc**, *fish*; Lat **pecus**, OE **feoh**, *cattle, money*.

2. **t** became **þ**⁷: Lat **tū**, OE **þū**, *thou*; Lat **trēs**, OE **þrēo**, *three*.

3. **k** became **h**⁸: Lat **cor** (Gen. **cordis**), OE **heorte**, *heart*; Lat **centum**, OE **hund**, *hundred*.

4. **bh** became **ḅ**⁹: Sansc **nábhas**, Gr **nephélē**, *cloud*, OE **nifol**, *dark*.

5. **dh** became **ṭ**¹⁰ (>OE **d**): Sansc **rudhirás**, Goth **raudai** (Dat. Sing.), ON **rauðr**, OE **rēad**, *red*.

6. **gh** became **ǵ**¹¹: IE ***ghóstis**, Lat **hostis**, Goth **gasts**, OE **ǵiest**, *stranger, guest*.

7. **b** became **p**: Lithuanian **dubùs**, OE **dēop**, *deep*; Old Bulgarian **slabu**, *slack*, OE **slæpan**, *sleep*.

8. **d** became **t**: Lat **decem**, OE **tiēn**, *ten*.

9. **g** became **k**: Lat **genu**, OE **cnēo**, *knee*; Lat **āger**, OE **æcer**, *field*.

206. The Law Operated in Three Stages:

1. IE voiceless stops (**p**, **t**, **k**) became the corresponding voiceless spirants (**f**, **þ**, **h**).

⁷ **þ** is used here (as generally in works on phonetics) to signify the voiceless spirant, as in ModE *thin*.

⁸ Originally in Gmc this was a voiceless spirant, sounded like ModHG **ch**, as in *ich*, *Nacht*.

⁹ A bilabial voiced spirant somewhat like ModE **v**, which, however, is a labio-dental voiced spirant. (In Goth pronounced **ḅ**, but spelled **b**.)

¹⁰ A linguo-dental voiced spirant like ModE **th** in *then*. (In Goth pronounced **ṭ**, but spelled **d**.)

¹¹ A voiced spirant like **ǵ** in North ModHG **sagen**, *sav*. (In Goth pronounced **ǵ**, but spelled **g**.)

2. IE voiced stops (**b, d, g**) became the corresponding voiceless stops (**p, t, k**).

3. IE voiced aspirated stops (**bh, dh, gh**)¹² became the corresponding voiced spirants (**ḃ, ḍ, ḡ**).

Grimm's Law, as originally stated, included the further change of the Gmc consonants into the Old High German consonants. As now understood, this OHG consonant shift was an independent phenomenon.

Not included in Grimm's Law are a number of late developments of Gmc consonants in the separate Gmc languages.

207. Verner's Law.

One group of apparent exceptions to Grimm's Law deserves special treatment. IE **p, t, k, s**, in the middle and at the end of words did not always develop into what we should expect, namely Prim Gmc **f, þ, h, s**. Instead, we find Prim Gmc **ḃ, ḍ, ḡ, z**, which developed into OE voiced **f** (i.e., **v**), **d, g**,¹³ **r**. The theory which accounts for these apparent irregularities is known as Verner's Law. The irregularities themselves are due to peculiarities of the IE and Prim Gmc accent.

208. Accent in Indo-European and in Germanic.

The Gmc accent was a fixed accent: that is, no matter what the inflectional form of the word, the primary accent was on the root syllable throughout. In IE, on the contrary, some words had the accent on the root syllable (e.g., Gr **lógos**, *word*), some on the suffix or termination, (Gr **hodós**, *road*), and some had a variable accent, i.e., in some inflected forms it was on the root syllable, in some it was on the suffix or termination (Gr Nom. Sing. **núx**, *night*, Gen. Sing. **nuktós**). This "shifting" or "variable" accent was a characteristic also of the most primitive Gmc until a period subsequent to the change of

¹² That is, voiced stops followed by **h**.

¹³ OE back or velar **g** was identical in pronunciation with Gmc **ḡ**.

IE **p, t, k**, to **f, þ, h**. In later Gmc, however, the accent shifted to the root syllable, where it remained in OE.

209. (a) Prim Gmc initial **f, þ, h, s** remained **f, þ, h, s**.

(b) Prim Gmc **f, þ, h, s** immediately preceded by the accent remained **f, þ, h, s**.

Thus in Prim Gmc ***fiska-**, ***þinna-**, ***hórna-**, ***sat**, and in ***hléfō**, ***wérþō**, ***féhu**, ***wás**, **f, þ, h, s** remained unchanged.

210. (c) Everywhere else, however, **f** became **b**; **þ** became **ð**; **h** became **g**; **s** became **z**; (OE **f, d, g, r**). Thus, in the 3d plural preterit indicative of strong verbs:

(Prim Gmc)	(Later Prim Gmc)	(Gmc)	(OE)
*wurþún >	*wurðún >	*wúrðun	wurdon
*fluhún >	*flugún >	*flúgun	flugon
*wæsún >	*wæzún >	*wæzun	wæron

PRIM GMC VOWEL CHANGES

211. Prim Gmc **e** became Gmc **i** under the following circumstances:

1. **e**+nasal+consonant became **i**: Lat **ventus**, Goth **winds**, OS, OE **wind**, *wind*.

2. **e** followed by **i, ī, or j** in next syllable, became **i**: Lat **medius**, Goth **midjis**, ON **miðr**, OS **middi**, OE **midd**, *middle*.

212. Prim Gmc **i** followed by **a, ō, or ē** in the next syllable, became Gmc **e**:

Lat **vir** (IE ***wíros**), Goth **waír**,¹⁴ OS, OHG, OE **wer**,¹⁵ *man*.

213. Prim Gmc **u** became Gmc **o** when followed by **a, æ, e, ē** or **ō** in the next syllable, unless prevented by an intervening nasal

¹⁴ Goth **aí** spells **e**. In Goth every **e** became **i** except when followed by **r, h, or hw**.

¹⁵ The Prim Gmc form ***wiraz** became ***weraz**, from which came **wer**.

combination, or by an intervening **i**, **ī**, or **j**. Prim Gmc ***gulðan** became OS, OHG, OE **gold**, *gold* (cf. OE **gylden**, *golden*, < Prim Gmc ***gulðinaz**); Prim Gmc ***hulpanaz** became OS **holpan**, OHG **holfan**, OE **holpen**, past participle of **helpan**, *help*.

But Prim Gmc ***bundanaz** became OE **bunden**, *bound*, and Prim Gmc ***fulljanan** became Gmc ***fulljan**, which became OE **fyllan**, *fill*.

214. Prim Gmc **eu** followed in the next syllable by **a**, **ē**, or **ō** became **eo**:¹⁶ OHG **deota**, *folk*; **beotan**, *command*; OS **theoda**, *thioda*; **beodan**, *biodan*.

Prim Gmc **eu** followed in the next syllable by **i**, **ī**, **j**, or **u**, became **iu**:¹⁶ OHG **diutisk**, *national*; **biutu**, 1st sg. pres, **biutis**, 2d sg. pres. *command*; OS **biudu**, *biudis*, *command*.

215. Prim Gmc Vowel+Nasal+h.

In a prehistoric period of Gmc, but after those changes had occurred which characterize Gmc, a nasal preceded by a vowel and followed by **h** disappeared, nasalizing and lengthening the preceding vowel.

Prim Gmc ***fanhanan** became Goth **fāhan**, (OE **fōn**), *seize*.

Prim Gmc ***þanhtǣ** became Goth **þāhta**, (OE **þōhte**), *thought*.

Prim Gmc ***þenhanan** became Goth **þeihan**, OS **thīhan**, (OE **þēon**), *thrive*.

Prim Gmc ***þunhtǣ** became Goth **þūhta**, (OE **þūhte**), *seemed*.

¹⁶ As seen in the illustrations, the two sounds are represented as follows in the various Gmc languages:

Gmc eo	Gmc iu
Goth iu	Goth iu
OHG eo	OHG iu
OS eo , io	OS iu
OE ēo (īo)	OE īo (ēo) when followed by -u
	OE ie when followed by i , ī , or j

216. Prim Gmc **ḥ**, **ḑ**, **ḡ**.

1. Prim Gmc **ḥ**, initial or preceded by **m**, became **b**: Goth **bairan**, OHG, OS, OE **beran**, *bear*; Goth, OHG, OS, OE **lamb**, *lamb*.

2. Prim Gmc **ḑ**, initial or preceded by **n**, became **d**: Goth **dauhtar**, OE **dohtor**, *daughter*.

3. Prim Gmc **ḡ**, preceded by **ŋ**, became the stop **g**: Goth, OE **singan**, *sing*.

GERMANIC VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS IN
WEST GERMANIC

217. Gmc had the following vowels and diphthongs:

Short vowels: **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**.

Long vowels: **ā**, **ē**,¹⁷ **æ**,¹⁸ **ī**, **ō**, **ū**.

Diphthongs: **ai**, **au**, **eo**, **iu**.

218. Gmc Long Vowels in WGmc.

Of the long vowels, **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū** remained unchanged in WGmc.

Gmc **æ** became WGmc **ā**: Goth **fr-ēt**, OS **āt**, OHG **āz**, (OE **æ̃t**), *ate*.

219. Gmc Diphthongs in WGmc.

All Gmc diphthongs, **ai**, **au**, **eo**, **iu** remained unchanged in WGmc, though later they went thru various changes in the separate WGmc languages.

220. Gmc Consonants in WGmc.

The Gmc consonants remained unchanged in WGmc, except that Gmc **z** became WGmc **r**: Gmc ***wæzun**, OS, OHG **wārun**, OE **wæron**, *were*; and Gmc **ḑ** became WGmc **d**: Goth **fadar**, OS **fadar**, OE **fæder**.

¹⁷ **ē** from IE **ēi**. See 204, 7.

¹⁸ **æ** from IE **ē**. See 203, 2.

221. **WGmc Gemination before j.**

In the WGmc period any single consonant (except **r**) preceded by a short vowel was geminated by a following **j**.

(Gmc)	(WGmc)	(Prehist OE)	(OE)
* satjan >	* sattjan >	* sættjan >	* settian > settan ¹⁹
* lezjan >	* laʒʒjan >	* læggjan >	* leggian > lecgan
* habjan ²⁰ >	* habbian >	* hæbbjan >	* hebbian > hebban
* hazjan >	* harjan >	* hærjan >	herian ²¹

WGMC SOUNDS222. **WGmc had the following vowels and diphthongs:**

Short vowels: **a, e, i, o, u.**

Long vowels: **ā, ē, ī, ō, ū.**

Diphthongs: **ai, au, eo, iu.**

223. **WGmc had the following consonants:**

j, w, semi-vowels	f, þ, h, s, voiceless spirants
r, l, liquids	b, d, g, voiced stops
m, n, ŋ, ²² nasals	β, ʒ, voiced spirants
p, t, k, voiceless stops	

WGMC VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS IN OE224. **WGmc a.**

WGmc **a** became OE **æ**²³ when followed by **h**; in all closed syllables; in open syllables unless followed by **a, u,** or **ō**; it did

¹⁹ Cf. Goth **satjan**, OS **settian**, OHG **sezzan**.

²⁰ In ***habjan**, the **h** was a voiced bilabial spirant, somewhat like ModE **v** (which, however, is a labio-dental). The result of geminating this bilabial voiced spirant was **-bb-**, as in **hebban**.

²¹ **-i-** of **herian** represents the sound **j**, i.e., ModE **y**.

²² **ŋ** represents the **ng** in *sing*.

²³ In the Mercian and Kentish dialects this **æ** later developed into **e**: **deġ, hefde**. A similar change occurred in OFris: **dei, heved**.

not change when followed by a nasal, or by *w*.²⁴ *dæg*, *day*; *hæfde*, *had*; *æcer*, *field*; *slēan* (<*sleahan <*slæhan <*slahan).

225. WGmc *a*+Nasal.

WGmc *a* followed by a nasal did not become *æ*, but either remained *a* or was changed to *o*.²⁵ In the earliest OE MSS this sound is always spelled *a*; in EWS MSS (850-900) *o* is decidedly more frequent than *a*; in the LWS MSS *a* is almost universal: *mann*, *monn*, *man*; *cann*, *conn*, *can*.

226. WGmc *e*+*m*.

WGmc *e* followed by *m* became OE *i*:²⁶ OHG *neman*, OE *niman*, *take*.

227. WGmc *o*.

WGmc *o* in some words appears as OE *u*,²⁷ especially between a labial consonant and *l*: *full*, *full*; *wulle*, *wool*; *wulf*, *wolf*; *fugol*, *bird*.

For the most part, however, WGmc *o* appears as OE *o*: *folgian*, *follow*; *bolt*, *bolt*; *folc*, *folk*.

228. WGmc *o*+Nasal.

WGmc *o* followed by a nasal became OE *u*:²⁸ OHG *donar*, OE *þunor*, *thunder*; OHG *honag*, OE *huniġ*, *honey*.

²⁴ WGmc *a* remained *a* in *dagas*, *dagum*; *sadol*, *saddle*; *hand*, *hand*; *awel*, *awl*. Sometimes WGmc *a* plus double consonant plus *a*, *o*, *u* remained *a*: *lappa*, *skirt*; *mattuc*, *mattock*.

²⁵ This change occurred also in OFris: *mon*.

²⁶ This change occurred also in OS: *niman*. In OFris it did not occur.

²⁷ This change occurred also in OFris and OS: OFris, OS *full*, *full*.

²⁸ This change occurred also in OFris and OS: OHG *coman*, OFris *kuma*, OS *kuman*, OE *cuman*, *come*.

229. WGmc *ā*.

WGmc *ā* became OE *ǣ*, but remained *ā* when followed by *w*, *p*, *g*, or *k*+back vowel:²⁹ OS *lātan*, OHG *lāzzan*, OE *lāetan*, *permit*.

230. WGmc *ā*+Nasal.

WGmc *ā* followed by a nasal became OE *ō*:³⁰ OHG *mānod*, OE *mōnaþ*, *month*; OHG *nāmun*, OE *nōmon*, *they took*; OHG *quāmun*, OE *cōmon*, *they came*.

Gmc *ā*, as in Goth *þāhta* (<Gmc **þanhtǣ*), OS *thāhta*, OHG *dāhte*, *he thought* (cf. 215), appears as OE *ō*: *þōhte*. In such words WGmc *ā* retained a nasal quality long enough in the OE period to become OE *ō*, and not *ǣ*.

231. WGmc Short Vowel+Nasal+Voiceless Spirant.

Prim Gmc short vowel+nasal+h had become Gmc long vowel+h. (See 215.)

WGmc short vowel+nasal+s, *f*, or *þ* became OE long vowel+s, *f*, or *þ*.³¹ Goth *uns*, OE *ūs*, *us*; Goth *fimf*, OE *fif*, *five*; Goth *munþs*, OE *mūþ*, *mouth*.

WGmc *a*+nasal+s, *f*, or *þ* became OE *ō*+s, *f*, or *þ*: OHG *gans*, OE *gōs*, *goose*; OHG *samfto*, OE *sōfte*, *softly*; Goth *anþar*, OE *ōþer*, *other*. In such words Prehist OE *ā* retained a nasal quality long enough in the OE period to become *ō*, and not *ǣ*. (Cf. 230.)

232. WGmc *ai*.

WGmc *ai* became OE *ā*: Goth *stáins*, OHG *stein*, OE *stān*, *stone*. WGmc *ai* must have become OE *ā* after WGmc *ā*

²⁹ WGmc *ā* remained *ā* in *sāwon*, *they saw*; *slāpan*, (mostly *slāpan* by analogy with *lāetan*, *slāpest*, etc.), *sleep*; *māgas*, *kinsmen*; *hrāca*, *spittle*. For OE *þōhte* from WGmc **þāhtǣ* (<Gmc **þanhtǣ*), see 230.

³⁰ This change occurs also in OFris: *nōmen*, *they took*.

³¹ This change occurs also in OFris and to a great extent in OS: Goth *anþar*, OFris, OS, OE *ōþer*, *other*.

became OE **ǣ**; otherwise the two sounds in OE would have fallen together into **ǣ**.

233. WGmc **au**.

WGmc **au** became OE **ēa**: Goth **hlaupan**, OHG **hlouffan**, OE **hlēapan**, *run*.

234. WGmc **eo**, **iu**.

WGmc **eo** (see 214, 219) remained OE **ēo**: OS **liof**, OE **lēof**, *deār*; OHG **deota**, OE **þēod**, *people*.

WGmc **iu** became OE **īo**:³² OS **liudi**, OE **liode**, *people*.

In EWS these two sounds, **ēo** and **īo**, were frequently levelled under **ēo**, altho **īo** also appears frequently for either. In LWS, **ēo** is practically universal for both sounds.

WGMC CONSONANTS IN OE

235. WGmc **r**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **ŋ** (liquids and nasals); **p**, **t**, **k** (voiceless stops); **b**, **d** (voiced stops); **ɣ** (voiced spirant), remained unchanged in Prim OE; **ḃ** (voiced spirant, see note 9 above) became voiced **f**, that is ModE **v**.

236. WGmc **n** or **m**, when preceded by a vowel and followed by **f**, **þ**, or **s**, disappeared in OFris, OE, and partly in OS; the vowel preceding **f**, **s**, or **þ** was lengthened. Cf. 231.

237. Final OE **ḃ** became voiceless **f**; **wif**, *woman*; final **ɣ** was frequently unvoiced, becoming **h**: **stāh**, *went* (cf. **stigan**, *stigon*).

238. WGmc **j**.

Initial **j**- remained unchanged, but was spelled **g**, **ge**, **gi**, or **i**: OHG **jār**, OE **ġēar**, *year*; OS, OHG **jung**, OE **ġeong**, **ġiong**, **iung**, *young*.

³² When **iu** was followed in the next syllable by **i**, **ī**, or **j**, it was umlauted to **īe**: Prehist OE ***biudip** became OE **biētt**, *he commands*.

Medial **-j-** remained between vowels, but was spelled **g**, **ge**: **ċieġan**, **ċieġean**, *call*.

Medial **-j-** remained after a short syllable ending in **-r**, but was spelled, **i**, **g**, **ig**, **ge**, or **ige**: **herian**, **herġan**, **heriġan**, **herġean**, **heriġean**, *praise*.

Medial **-j-** after a long syllable ending in a consonant became **i**, and was lost before the year 700: OS **settian**, OE **settan**, *set*.

Final **-j** remained after long vowels or diphthongs, but was spelled **g**: **hieġ**, *hedge*.

239. WGmc **w**.

Initial and medial **w-**, **-w-** remained: **wēnan**, *expect*; **blōwan**, *bloom*; **beadwe**, *of a battle*.

Final **-w** after a vowel coalesced into a diphthong: WGmc ***trew** > OE **trēo**, *tree*.

SIMPLIFICATION OF DOUBLE CONSONANTS

240. (a) Final double consonants were very frequently written single: **mann**, **man**, *man*; **feorr**, **feor**, *far*.

(b) Medially, a double consonant adjacent to another consonant was simplified: Prehist OE ***wendide** > ***wendde** > **wende**, *turned*; ***fullide** > ***fyllde** > **fylde**, *filled*.

PREHISTORIC OE CHANGES

241. A number of important sound changes, both vowel and consonant, occurred within the OE period, but earlier than the date of our oldest documents.

242. OE palatalization of **ɜ** (**g**), **k**, **gg**, **kk**.

Initial **ɜ** (**g**) and **k** (**c**) were palatalized (or fronted) in Prehistoric OE by a following palatal vowel or diphthong. The palatalization was caused by:

i, **ī**, **e**, **ē**, **æ**,³³ or **ǣ**.

io, **ēo**, **ēa**.

³³ The short vowels **i**, **e**, and **æ** at a later period "broke" to **io**, **eo**, and **ea**, if followed by certain consonants. Cf. 248.

Palatalized **ȝ** (**ġ**) fell together in sound with **j**- (in **ġēar** from WGmc ***jār**).

Palatalized **k** (**ċ**) remained a front stop consonant in some dialects, but in WS underwent the further change to **č** (Mod E **ch** in *church*).

Illustrations:

ġiellan, **ġeaf**, **ġēafon**, **ġeorn**, **ġeard**, **ġēotan**.

ċirice, **ċinn**, **ċidan**, **ċeaster**, **ċeorl**, **ċiest**, **ċēosan**.

243. Prehist OE **ȝ**, **gg**, **k**, **kk**, **ȝk**, and **ȝȝ** were palatalized in WS by a following **i**, **ī**, or **j**:

ȝ became **ġ**: WGmc ***burȝi** (Dat. Sing.) became OE **byrȝ** (often spelled **byriȝ**) *city*; WGmc ***bauȝjan** became OE **bīeȝan**, *bend*.

k became **ċ** (ModE **ch**): WGmc ***bisōkjan** became OE **besēċan**, *beseech*; WGmc **bōci** (Dat. Sing.) became OE **bēċ**, *book*.

kk became **ċċ** (ModE **ch**): WGmc ***wikkjōn** became OE **wiċċe**, *witch*.

ȝȝ became **cȝ** (ModE **dȝ** as in *bridge*): WGmc ***hruȝȝjaz** became OE **hrycȝ**, *ridge*.

ȝk became **nċ** (ModE **nch**): WGmc ***bankjō** became OE **benċ**, *bench*.

ȝȝ became **nȝ** (ModE **nȝe** as in *singe*): WGmc ***sangjan** became OE **sengȝan**, *singe*.

244. Prehist OE final **k** (**c**) was palatalized by a preceding **i** or **ī**: **iċ**, *I*; **diċ**, *ditch*.

245. Prehist OE **ȝ** (**g**) at the end of a word or syllable was palatalized by a preceding **æ**, **ǣ**, **e**, **ē**, **i**, or **ī**: **dæȝ**, *day*, **weȝ**, *way*, **stiȝ** (Imper. Sing.), *go*; **hāliȝ**, *holy*.

246. Prehist OE **ȝ** (**g**) was palatalized between palatal vowels: **dæȝes**; **weges**.

247. **WGmc sk.**

WGmc **sk** was spelled **sc** in OE, but in WS developed into the sound of ModE **sh** as in *shoe*; OE **scōh**, *shoe*; **scīnan**, *shine*; **scunian**, *shun*; **scrūd**, *garment*.

In both EWS and LWS the palatal character of this sound was frequently indicated in the spelling by the insertion of an **e** when the following vowel was velar: **sceolon**, *shall*; **sceōp**, *created*; **sceama**, *shame*; **fisceas**, *fish*. It is possible, however, that this **e** represents an intermediate vowel or glide that developed between the palatal **sc** and the back vowel that followed.

248. **Breaking.**

OE **æ**, **e**, **i** (front vowels) developed into diphthongs, or "broke," in a prehistoric period when followed by **l**+consonant, **r**+consonant, or **h**. (See Chapter IX.)

The diphthongs at first consisted of **æ**, **e**, or **i**+the glide sound **u**: **æu**, **eu**, **iu**.

Later **æu** became **ea**, **eu** became **eo**,³⁴ **iu** became **io**.³⁴

These diphthongs were short, and are to be distinguished from the OE long diphthongs **ēa**, **ēo**, **īo**, which developed from the WGmc diphthongs **au**, **eo**, **iu**.

e, **i** broke before **l**+consonant only when the combination was **lh**; **e** also broke between **s** and **lc** or **lf**, e.g., **āseolcan**, *become sluggish*; **seolf**, *self*.

æ broke before **l**+consonant only in Kent and eastern Wessex. In those dialects in which breaking did not occur

³⁴ In EWS MSS **eo** and **io** are frequently levelled to **eo**. In LWS **eo** is practically universal.

the *æ* became *a* before *l*+consonant. Both *ea* and *a* occur in EWS: *feallan*, *fallan*, *fall*. LWS has only *ea*.

Illustrations:

1. *æ* became *ea*: **fællan* > *feallan*, *fall*; **ærm* > *earm*, *arm*, **fæht* > *feiht*, *fought*; **slæhan* > **sleahan* > *slēan*, *strike*.

2. *e* became *eo*: **selh* > *seolh*, *seal*; **werþ* > *weorþ*, *worth*; **fehtan* > *feohtan*, *fight*; **feh* > *feoh*, *cattle*; **fehes* (Gen. Sing.) > **feohes* > *fēos*.

3. *i* became *io*: **wirþiþ*³⁵ (3d Sing. Pres.) > **wiorþiþ* > **wierþiþ* > *wierþ*, *becomes*; **sihiþ* > **siohiþ* > *siehþ*, *sees*.

249. The OE long front vowels *ǣ*, *ī* were broken to *ēa*, *io* (*ēo*), before *h*:

1. *ǣ* became *ēa*: **nǣh* > *nēah*, *near*.

2. *ī* became *io*, *ēo*: **liht* > *lioht*, *lēoht*, *light* (adj.); **betwih* > *betwēoh*, *between*; **tīhan* > **tiohan* > *tion*, *tēon*, *blame*.

250. Diphthongisation by Initial Palatals.

The initial palatals *ġ*, *ċ*, *sc* (see 242) caused a following *e* to diphthongise to *ie*, *æ* to *ea*, *ǣ* to *ēa*. (See Chapter X.)

Illustrations:

1. *e* became *ie* (LWS *i* or *y*): **ġefan* > *ġiefan*, *give*; **sceran* > *scieran*, *shear*.

2. *æ* became *ea*: **ġæf* > *ġeaf*, *gave*; **ċæster* > *ċeaster*, *city*; **scæl* > *sceal*, *shall*.

3. *ǣ* became *ēa*: **ġǣfon* > *ġēafon*, *gave*; **ġǣr* > *ġēar*, *year*; **ċǣce* > *ċēace*, *cheek*; **scǣron* > *scēaron*, *sheared*.

251. *i*-, *ī*-, *j*-Umlaut.

Every vowel and diphthong in Prehist OE (except *ǣ*, *ē*, *i*, and *ī*) was raised or fronted if an *i*, *ī*, or *j* occurred in the follow-

³⁵ *i* of **wirþiþ* came from *e* (Prim Gmc **werþiþ*); the change of Prim Gmc *e* to *i* was Gmc; see 211, 2; *io* became *ie* as the result of OE umlaut; see 251.

ing syllable. This change is commonly called “i-umlaut,” sometimes “mutation.” It was caused by the raising and fronting influence of the high front sound **i**, **ī**, or **j**; that is, a low or a back vowel was approximated to the position of a following high front **i**, **ī**, or **j**.

Illustrations:

æ became **e**: ***sættjan** > **settan**, *set*; ***æġi** > **eġe**, *fear*.

æ+cons. group usually remained **æ**: ***fæstjan** > **fæstan**, *make fast*.

a became **e**: ***manni** > **mænn** > **menn**, *men*; ***sandjan** > **sendan**, *send*.

ā became **ǣ**: ***hāli** > **hǣl**, *health*; ***hāljan** > **hǣlan**, *heal*.

o became **œ** > **e**:³⁶ ***dohtri** > ***dœhtri** > **dehter** (Dat. Sing.), *daughter*.

ō became **ǣ** > **ē**:³⁶ ***dōmjan** > **dǣman** > **dēman**, *judge*.

u became **y**:³⁷ ***fulljan** > **fyllan**, *fill*.

ū became **ȳ**:³⁷ ***tūnjan** > **tȳnan**, *enclose*.

io became **ie** (LWS **i** or **y**):³⁸ ***wiorpiþ** > **wierpþ**, *becomes*.

io became **ie** (LWS **i** or **ȳ**):³⁹ ***ġeþiodjan** > **ġeþiedan**, *unite*.

ea became **ie**: ***feallip** > **fielþ**, *falls*.

ēa became **ie**: ***hēarjan** > **hieran**, *hear*.

³⁶ The back rounded vowels **o**, **ō** were fronted to **œ**, **ǣ** (like ModHG **ö**, **ö**) as shown by the spelling **œ** in the earliest documents, as well as in the later documents of some dialects. By 900 the sounds had been completely unrounded in WS to **e**, **ē**.

³⁷ The back rounded vowels **u**, **ū** were fronted and became lip-rounded palatal vowels **y**, **ȳ** (like ModHG **ü**, **ü**). In some dialects **y**, **ȳ** were unrounded in the OE period to **i**, **ī**. In the Southern dialect **y**, **ȳ** remained rounded even in the MidE period.

³⁸ In the non-WS dialects, and even to some extent in WS, **io** followed by **r**+consonant was not umlauted by a following **i**, **ī**, or **j**: Angl., Kent., WS. **iorre**, *angry*; **hiorde**, *shepherd*; beside usual WS **ierre**, **hierde**.

³⁹ In the non-WS dialects, and even to some extent in WS, **io** was not umlauted by a following **i**, **ī**, or **j**: **stīoran**, *steer*; **liode**, *people* (**i**-stem).

252. **u-, o-, a-Umlaut.**

About 700, the OE vowels **æ**, **e**, and **i** were, under some circumstances (and in some districts), diphthongised to **ea**, **eo**, and **io** by **u**, **o**, or **a** in the following syllable.⁴⁰

This umlaut is similar to Breaking, in that the same vowels were affected, they developed into the same diphthongs, and the influence causing the development of the "glide" was a following back sound—in this case a vowel.

u-, o-, a-Umlaut is only partly present in pure WS. The umlaut of **æ** appears only in Mercian and in Kentish (except in WS **ealu**).

The influence of the **u**, **o**, or **a** operated freely thru an intervening liquid or labial (**l**, **r**, **f**, **p**); was somewhat restricted by an intervening dental (**t**, **d**, **þ**, **s**) or nasal; and was much restricted by an intervening velar (**c**, **g**). The umlaut was usually prevented by an intervening double consonant or by two consonants: **swimman**, *swim*; **drincan**, *drink*.

WS illustrations:

1. **æ** became **ea** ***ælu** > **ealu**, *ale*.⁴¹
2. **e** became **eo** (**io**): ***herot** > **heorot**, *hart*; ***hefon** > **heofon**,
heaven.
3. **i** became **io** (**eo**): ***silufr** > **siolfor**, *silver*; ***sifun** > **siofun**,
seven.

⁴⁰ Inasmuch as the vowel **æ** does not occur in WS when the vowel of the following syllable is **u**, **o**, or **a**, this umlaut could not take place in the WS dialect. At the time when the **u-, o-, a-**umlaut was operating, however, the Mercian dialect (and probably the Kentish dialect) had **æ** before back as well as front vowels; we therefore have Mercian **heafoc**, **featu**, etc., as compared with WS **hafoc**, **fatu**, etc. In **ealo**, the single WS example of this umlaut of **æ**, the vowel **æ** was probably introduced into the nominative form **alo** from the dative singular ***æleþe**, in which **æ** was phonetically regular.

⁴¹ See preceding note.

UNACCENTED VOWELS

253. A peculiarity of the Gmc languages, already noted in the discussion of Verner's Law (see 208), is the fixed accent on the radical syllable. This accent being a strong stress accent, its presence on one syllable of a word resulted in the loss of accent on adjacent and near-by syllables of the word, altho often a secondary accent was retained, especially in the second element of compound words, such as **bordweall**, **wis-fæst**. In general, however, the lack of accent on suffixes and inflectional endings resulted, in Gmc and in OE, in the weakening or disappearance of vowels, and even of final consonants in unaccented syllables.

254. The history of IE and Gmc consonants and vowels in medial and final unaccented syllables is too lengthy and complicated for profitable discussion in an elementary book about OE. Two unaccented vowels, however, in the final position are of sufficient importance to compel attention. They are **-ī**, and **-ō**.

255. Gmc final **-ī** preserved its original sound in OE long enough to umlaut a preceding vowel. About 700 it disappeared if preceded by a long syllable; if preceded by a short syllable, it became **-e**: thus in the **i**-stem nouns: ***gasti** > ***ġæsti** > ***ġeasti** > ***ġiesti** > **ġiest**; ***wini** > **wine**.^v

256. WGmc final **-ō** became OE **-u**, thus falling together with original final **-u**, which occurs in the **u**-stems. About 700, final **-u** disappeared after a long radical syllable, but remained after a short radical syllable: WGmc ***gefō** > OE **ġiefu**; WGmc ***lairō** > Prehist OE ***lāru** > OE **lār**; WGmc ***feldu** > OE **feld**; WGmc ***handu** > OE **hand**; **sunu**, **duru**, with short radical syllables, retain original **-u**.

257. When followed by a consonant in a final syllable, WGmc unaccented **-ō-** often became **a:** Second weak verbs, 2d and 3d Sing. Pres. Indic., **bodast, bodap** < Prehist OE ***bodōs(t), *bodōþ**.

SYNCOPATION

258. Syncopation, which consists in the loss of a vowel between two consonants, occurred frequently in the case of the short vowels **e, i** and **o**, after the period of umlaut, but before 700. Syncopation affected sometimes the vowel of the second syllable of a dissyllabic word or form, and sometimes the vowel of the medial syllable of a trisyllabic word or form.

259. Syncopation in Dissyllabic Forms.

The dissyllabic forms in which the vowel of the second syllable is syncopated are:

(1) The 2d and 3d Sing. Pres. Indic. of all strong verbs and of many first weak verbs: **helpan, hilpst, hilþþ; cuman, cymst, cymþ; dēman, dēmst, dēmþ; lecgan, leġst, leġþ**.

(2) The Past Part. of first weak verbs which had a radical syllable ending in **d** or **t**: **hreddan, hredd; settan, sett; lādan, lādd**.

260. Syncopation in Trisyllabic Forms.

Syncopation of the vowel of the second (medial) syllable occurred in an open syllable when the radical syllable was long. The situation occurred in:

(1) Some inflectional forms of nouns and adjectives, such as: **engles, engle, englas**; beside Nom. Sing. **engel, angel**; **hēafdes, hēafde**, beside **hēafod, head**; **hālġes, hālġum, hālġan** beside **hālīġ, holy**; **ōþres, ōþre**, beside **ōþer, other**.

(2) In the Pret. of first weak verbs which had an originally long radical syllable: **dēmde, dēmdet, dēmdon, judged**.

(3) In inflected forms of the Past Part. of first weak verbs with a long radical syllable, if the inflectional ending began with a vowel: Nom. Acc. Plu. **hīerde**, *heard*, beside Acc. Sing. Masc. **hīeredne**; **fylde**, beside **fylledne**, *filled*; **dēmdē**, beside **dēmedne**, *judged*.

(4) In some originally trisyllabic nouns, such as Prehist OE ***strangiþō**, OE **strengþu**, *strength*.

(5) In the comparative degree of adjectives: ***brādira**, **brædra**, *broader*.

CONSONANT CHANGES

261. **f, þ, s**, in OE.

Initial and final Prim OE **f**, **þ**, and **s** remained voiceless in OE: **fif**, *five*; **þorn**, *thorn*; **wearþ**, *became*; **sendan**, *send*; **wæs**, *was*.

Medial **f** and **s** next to voiceless consonants remained voiceless: **hæft**, *captive*; **fæst**, *firm*.

Medial **f**, **þ**, and **s** between voiced sounds became voiced spirants, **v**, **ð**, and **z**, about 700: **wulfas**, *wolves*; **sēoþan**, *boil*; **nosu**, *nose*.

262. WGmc **h** in OE.

WGmc initial **h** was a simple breath, as in ModE *horn*. WGmc medial or final **h** was a voiceless spirant like ModHG **ch** in **macht**, *makes*, **ich**, *I*.

Initial **h** in OE remained a simple breath, as in ModE: **horn**, *horn*.

Medial **-h-** remained a voiceless spirant before a voiceless consonant: **sōhte**, *he sought*.

Final **-h** remained a spirant: **ġeþāh**, *he prospered*.

hs became **ks** (**x**): **weahsan**, *grow*.

263. Loss of Intervocalic **h**.

1. Intervocalic **h** disappeared about 700. The accented vowel or diphthong which originally preceded **h** absorbed the vowel which followed.

ā+vowel became **ā**: ***tāhe** became **tā**, *toe*.

ō+vowel became **ō**: ***fōhu** became **fō**, *I seize*; ***fōhan** became **fōn**, *seize*; ***fōhe** became **fō**, *I seize* (subjunc.).

ēa+vowel became **ēa**: ***hēahes** became **hēas**, *high* (Gen. Sing.).

ēo+vowel became **ēo**: ***flēohan** became **flēon**, *flee*.

īo+vowel became **īo**: ***tīohan** became **tīon** (**tēon**), *blame*.

A short diphthong was lengthened by the absorption of a following vowel:

ea+vowel became **ēa**: ***sleahan** became **slēan**, *strike*.

eo+vowel became **ēo**: ***feohes** became **fēos**, *property* (Gen. Sing.).

io+vowel became **īo**: ***twioha** became **twīo** (**twēo**), *doubt*.

ie+vowel became **īe**: ***iehe** became **īe**, *river* (Dat. Sing.).

Apparent exceptions to this change are 2d sing. pres. **fēhst**, **siehst** (<***fōhis**, ***siohis**); 3d sing. **fēhþ**, **siehþ** (<***fōhiþ**, ***siohiþ**). The preservation of the originally intervocalic **h** is due here to the syncopation of the following vowel **i**, which took place before the disappearance of intervocalic **h**.

2. **h** between a liquid and a vowel also disappeared about 700. A short preceding diphthong is usually lengthened:

ea became **ēa**: ***mearhes** became **mēares**, *of a horse*; ***Wealhas** became **Wēalas**, *foreigners*.

eo became **ēo**: ***feorhes** became **fēores**, *of a life*; ***seolhes** became **sēoles**, *of a seal*.

LATE CHANGES IN VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

264. During the historic period of OE a number of changes took place in vowels and diphthongs.

265. In EWS, **ie** or **īe**, no matter of what origin, and without regard to the adjacent sounds, frequently became **i** or **ī**, beside which appears also **ie** or **īe**. EWS **ġiefan**, **ġifan**, *give*; **nieht**, **niht**, *night*; **scieppend**, **scippend**, *creator*; **hierde**, **hirde**, *shepherd*; **wielm**, **wilm**, *welling*; **hieran**, **hīran**, *hear*; **ġieman**, **ġīman**, *care for*; **fiend**, **find**, *foes*; **þrie**, **þrī**, *three*. After **w**, however, **ie** frequently appears in EWS as **y**; e.g., **wierðe**, **wyrðe**; **wierpþ**, **wyrpþ**.

In LWS, **ie** or **īe** usually appears as **y** or **ȳ**, but sometimes, especially when followed by **c**, **ġ**, **h**, or **s**, as **i** or **ī**.

LWS **ġyfan**, **wylm**, **hȳran**, **ġȳman**, **fȳnd**, **þrȳ**.

LWS **hlihhan**, *laugh*; **niht**, *night*; **līġ**, *flame*; **frȳst**, *freezes*, (EWS **hliehhan**, **nieht**, **lieġ**, **frīest**).

266. **y** or **ȳ** which came from **u** or **ū** by **i**-umlaut became LWS **i** or **ī** thru the influence of a following palatal; **hiġe**, *mind*; **bicgan**, *buy*; **þincan**, *seem*; **brīcþ**⁴² (**brūcan**), *enjoys*, (EWS **hyġe**, **bycgan**, **þyncan**, **brȳcþ**).

267. **io** and **eo**, the diphthongs resulting from Breaking⁴ became, as early as 900, **ie**, **i**, or **y** before **hs** and **ht**: Gmc ***sehs**, EWS **seox** > WS **siex**, **six**, *six*; Gmc ***reht**, Prehist OE ***reoht** > WS **riht**, **ryht**, *right*; Gmc ***cneht**, Prehist OE ***cneoht** > WS **cnieht**, **cniht**, *boy*.

In LWS the diphthong **eo** usually became **u** when it was preceded by **w** and followed by **r** plus a consonant: EWS **weorðan**, LWS **wurðan**, *become*; EWS **sweord**, LWS **swurd**, *sword*.

⁴² In **brīcþ** (EWS **brȳcþ**) the **c** was palatalised, that is fronted, in Prehist OE, but probably did not undergo the further change to **ċ**. The change to **ċ** was hindered by the **þ** which followed the **c** after syncopation had taken place. See 242.

268. **ea**, the diphthong resulting from Breaking, often became EWS **e** before **h**: **meahte**, **mehte**, *might*; **eahta**, **ehta**, *eight*; **feaht**, **feht**, *fought*; **seah**, **seh**, *saw*.

269. **ea**, of whatever origin, sometimes became EWS **e** when preceded by **ċ**, **ġ**, or **sc**: **ċeaster**, **ċester**, *city*; **forġeaf**, **forġef**, *forgave*; **sceal**, **scel**, *shall*.

270. **ēa** sometimes became EWS **ē** when preceded by **ċ**, **ġ**, or **sc**: **ġēar**, **ġēr**, *year*; **onġēan**, **onġēn**, *against*; **ċēas**, **ċēs**, *chose*; **scēaþ**, **scēþ**, *sheath*.

271. **ēa** often became LWS **ē** when followed by **hþ**, **hs**, or **hg**: ***ēagþýrel**, **ēhþýrel**, *window*; **hēahsta**, **hēhsta**, *highest*; **nēahġebūr**, **nēhġebūr**, *neighbor*.

272. **ēa** often became LWS **ē** when followed by **h**, **g**, **c**: **tēah**, **tēh**, *drew*; **þēah**, **þēh**, *though*; **hēah**, **hēh**, *high*; **nēah**, **nēh**, *near*; **ēage**, **ēġe**, *eye*; **ēac**, **ēc**, *also*.

273. LWS **gd**, **gn**.

In LWS, **g** between a short vowel and a voiced dental was frequently lost; the preceding vowel was lengthened: **frīġnan** became **frīnan**, *ask*; **breġdan** became **brēdan**, *move*.

MORPHOLOGY

DECLENSIONS

301. The Old English declensions were historically the same as those of Latin, Greek, Sanscrit, Gothic, Old Norse, Old Saxon, and Old High German.

302. The Gmc noun in a prehistoric period was inflected by adding to a **stem** various **endings** which indicated case and number.

A **stem** seems originally to have consisted of an element called a "base" or "root," to which usually was added a suffix consisting of a vowel (IE **e**, **o**, **ā**, **i**, **u**), or of a consonant (**r**), or of a vowel plus a consonant (**ĕn**, **ōn**, **es**, **os**, **et**, **ot**, etc.); some words in the IE languages had stems consisting of a base ending in a consonant to which the case endings were attached without an intervening suffix.

The classification of nouns in school grammars of Latin does not conform to the scientific classification. The Lat "first" declension consists of IE **ā**-stems; the "second" declension of IE **o**-stems; the "third" of consonant-stems and **i**-stems; the "fourth" of **u**-stems.

303. The vowel stems can be clearly distinguished in Gothic, where, in the Acc. Plu., the case ending **-ns** (or **-s**) is added to the stem. It must be remembered that IE **o** became Gmc **a**, and IE **ā** became Gmc **ō**.

1. IE **o**, Gmc **a**-decl. Goth Acc. Plu. **daga-ns**, *days*.
2. IE **ā**, Gmc **ō**-decl. Goth Acc. Plu. **gibō-s**, *gifts*.
3. IE and Gmc **i**-decl. Goth Acc. Plu. **gasti-ns**, *guests*.
4. IE and Gmc **u**-decl. Goth Acc. Plu. **sunu-ns**, *sons*.

CASE ENDINGS

304. IE had eight cases: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative, Instrumental, Locative. These cases were distinguished by case endings which were added to the stem. The IE case endings were so affected, however, by Gmc and OE sound changes that in OE the fact that the noun originally consisted of base, suffix, and case ending is usually much obscured. In some forms, e.g., OE Nom. Sing. **dæg** (<Gmc *dagaz) both the vowel suffix, indicating the kind of stem, and the case ending have been completely lost.

Furthermore, in OE (as in most other IE languages) cases have "fallen together," that is, by phonetic change two or more cases which were originally distinct have become identical, or one case ending has been abandoned for another. Thus, of the eight IE cases, OE has only four surviving in the noun, and five in the adjective and pronoun: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental.

305. Vowel Stems. Four kinds of Gmc vowel stems are to be distinguished: **a**-stems (masc. and neut.), **ō**-stems (fem.), **i**-stems (all genders), **u**-stems (all genders).

In OE nearly all the nouns originally belonging to the **i**-stems and **u**-stems have "gone over" to the **a**-stems or the **ō**-stems; that is to say, the masculine and neuter **i**-stems and **u**-stems exhibit the same inflectional endings as the **a**-stems, the feminines the same endings as the **ō**-stems.

306. Consonant Stems. Several types of consonant stems existed in OE. The original consonant stems are of two types:

1. Those consisting of a radical syllable+suffix ending in a consonant, to which were added the primitive case endings.

The consonant stems of this first class had suffixes ending in **-n** (huntan-), **-z** (lambaz-), **-r** (faðr-), **-þ** (mōnaþ-).

2. Those consisting of a radical syllable ending in a consonant, to which were added the primitive case endings.

The consonant stems of this second class end in any consonant (**mann**, **fōt**, **bōc**).

3. In addition to these, certain derivative consonant stems existed in OE which were originally present active participles which became nouns of the agent, as **fēond**, *hater*, *enemy*. The stem of these nouns ends in **-nd**.

Nouns

MASCULINE AND NEUTER a-DECLENSION

307. The a-declension¹ consists of masculines and neuters. It includes a-stems, ja-stems, and wa-stems.

MASCULINE a-STEMS

Monosyllables: **stān**, *stone*; **dæg**, *day*; **mearh**, *horse*; **eoh**, *horse*.

		Singular			
N. A.	stān	dæg	mearh	eoh	<i>fearh - 220</i>
G.	stānes	dægēs	mēares	ēos	
D. I.	stāne	dægē	mēare	ēo	
		Plural			
N. A.	stānas	dagas	mēaras		
G.	stāna	daga	mēara		
D. I.	stānum	dagum	mēarum		

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **stān** was ***stainaz**.

For the change from **a** to **æ** in the Sing. of **dæg**, see 224. For the disappearance of **h** in the oblique cases of **mearh**, **eoh**, see 263.

¹ The Gmc a-declension corresponds to the Lat and Gr "second" declen^{sion} (Lat *servus*, *servos*; Gr *logos*); it is sometimes called the "o-declension," according to the IE terminology.

308. Dissyllables: *cyning*, *king*; *engel*, *angel*; *heofon*, *heaven*; *fugol*, *bird*.

Singular

N. A.	<i>cyning</i>	<i>engel</i>	<i>heofon</i>	<i>fugol</i>
G.	<i>cyninges</i>	<i>engles</i>	<i>heofones</i>	<i>fugles</i>
D. I.	<i>cyninge</i>	<i>engle</i>	<i>heofone</i>	<i>fugle</i>

Plural

N. A.	<i>cyningas</i>	<i>englas</i>	<i>heofenas</i>	<i>fuglas</i>
G.	<i>cyninga</i>	<i>engla</i>	<i>heofena</i>	<i>fugla</i>
D. I.	<i>cyningum</i>	<i>englum</i>	<i>heofenum</i>	<i>fuglum</i>

If the first syllable is long and if the second syllable is short, as in *engel*, as a general rule the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the Nom. Sing. does not appear in the inflected forms. If both syllables are short, the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the Nom. Sing. sometimes appears and sometime does not appear in the inflected forms.

NEUTER a-STEMS

309. Monosyllables: *lim*, *limb*; *fæt*, *vessel*; *bān*, *bone*; *word*, *word*; *feoh*, *property*.

Singular

N. A.	<i>lim</i>	<i>fæt</i>	<i>bān</i>	<i>word</i>	<i>feoh</i>
G.	<i>limes</i>	<i>fætes</i>	<i>bānes</i>	<i>wordes</i>	<i>fēos</i>
D. I.	<i>lime</i>	<i>fæte</i>	<i>bāne</i>	<i>worde</i>	<i>fēo</i>

Plural

N. A.	<i>limu</i>	<i>fatu</i>	<i>bān</i>	<i>word</i>
G.	<i>lima</i>	<i>fata</i>	<i>bāna</i>	<i>worda</i>
D. I.	<i>limum</i>	<i>fatum</i>	<i>bānum</i>	<i>wordum</i>

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of *lim* was **limam*.

In monosyllables the ending -u of the Nom.-Acc. Plu. disappeared after a long syllable (see 256). For *fēos*, *fēo*, see 263.

When vowel is short, take 'u' in plural.

310. Dissyllables: **tungol**, *star*; **wæter**, *water*; **tācen**, *sign*; **hēafod**, *head*.

Singular

N. A.	tungol	wæter	tācen	hēafod
G.	tungles	wæteres	tācnes	hēafdes
D. I.	tungle	wætere	tācne	hēafde

Plural

N. A.	tungol (-glu)	wæter(-u)	tācen(-u)	hēaf(o)du
G.	tungla	wætera	tācna	hēafda
D. I.	tunglum	wæterum	tācnum	hēafdum

If the first syllable is long, and the second short, as in **tungol**, the vowel which appears in the second syllable of the Nom. Sing. generally does not appear in the inflected forms.

MASCULINE AND NEUTER **ja**-STEMS

maee

311. Masculines: **secg**, *man*; **here**, *army*; **ende**, *end*.

Singular

N. A.	secg	here	ende
G.	secges	her(i)ġes	endes
D. I.	secge	her(i)ġe	ende

Plural

N. A.	secg(e)as	her(i)ġas	endas
G.	secg(e)a	her(i)ġa	enda
D. I.	secg(e)um	her(i)ġum	endum

312. Neuters: **cynn**, *kin*; **rīce**, *kingdom*; **wēsten**, *waste*.

Singular

N. A.	cyn(n)	rīce	wēsten
G.	cynnes	rīces	wēstennes
D. I.	cynne	rīce	wēstenne

Plural

N. A.	cyn(n)	rīcu	wēstennu
G.	cynna	rīca	wēstenna
D. I.	cynnum	rīcum	wēstennum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **secg** and **cynn** were ***saǵjaz** and ***kunjam**.

The **j** umlauted the vowel of the preceding syllable, and geminated the final consonant (except **r**) if the vowel of the preceding syllable was short (see 251, 238, 221). The **j** disappeared except after **r**, as in **herǵes** (see 238).

In the Nom. Sing., **secg** and **cynn**, which exhibit no ending, had originally short radical syllables; while **ende** and **riċe**, which exhibit the ending **-e**, had originally long radical syllables.

In the Nom.-Acc. Neut. Plu., **cynn**, with no ending, had an originally short radical syllable; while **riċu**, with **-u**, had an originally long radical syllable.

wa-STEMS

313. Masculines: **bearu**, *grove*; **þēow**, *servant*.

Singular		
N. A.	bearu, -o	þēo(w)
G.	bearwes	þēowes
D. I.	bearwe	þēowe
Plural		
N. A.	bearwas	þēowas
G.	bearwa	þēowa
D. I.	bearwum	þēowum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **bearu** and **þēow** were ***barwaz** and ***þewaz**. When the ending **-az** was lost, **-w** became vocalized to **-u**, often written **-o**. The **-u** remained after a short syllable as in **bearu**. When the radical syllable ended in a short vowel, the **-u** combined with the vowel to form a diphthong. Thus Prim OE ***þew** > ***þeu** > **þēo**. The **-w** of **þēow** is by analogy with the oblique cases. In the oblique cases the original **e** of **þēow** became **eo** thru the influence of the **w** that followed; this **eo**, which was originally short, was fre-

quently lengthened to **ēo** thru the influence of the nominative form **þēo(w)**.

314. Neuters: **bealu**, *evil*; **cnēo**, *knee*.

Singular			
N. A.	bealu , -o		cnēo(w)
G.	bealwes		cnēowes
D. I.	bealwe		cnēowe
Plural			
N. A.	bealu , -o		cnēo(w) , -wu
G.	bealwa		cnēowa
D. I.	bealwum		cnēowum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **bealu** was ***balwam**.

FEMININE **ō**-DECLENSION

315. The **ō**-declension² consists of feminine nouns only. It includes **ō**-stems, **jō**-stems, and **wō**-stems.

FEMININE **ō**-STEMS

ġiefu, *gift*; **lār**, *wisdom*.

	Singular		Plural	
N.	ġiefu	lār	ġiefa , -e	lāra , -e
G.	ġiefe	lāre	ġiefa , -ena	lāra , -na, -ena
D. I.	ġiefe	lāre	ġiefum	lārum
A.	ġiefe	lāre	ġiefa , -e	lāra , -e

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **ġiefu** was ***ġebō**.

The Nom. Sing. ending **-u** was retained after a short syllable, but was lost after a long syllable (see 256).

The ending **-ena**, **-na** of the Gen. Plu., which occurs in some words of this class beside the regular Gen. Plu. ending **-a**, is

² The Gmc **ō**-declension corresponds to the Lat and Gr "first" declension (Lat **mēnsā**-); it is sometimes called the "**ā**-declension," according to the IE terminology.

after the analogy of the **n**-stems. It occurs chiefly in words with short stems.

316. Dissyllables: firen, *crime*; sāwol, *soul*.

	Singular			Plural	
N.	firen	sāwol	N. A.	firena, -e	sāwla, -e
G.	firene	sāwle		firena	sāwla
D. I.	firene	sāwle		firenum	sāwlum
A.	firene	sāwle			

In the Nom. Sing. no endings occur.

If the radical syllable is long, as in **sāwol**, the vowel of the second syllable of the Nom. Sing. generally does not appear in the inflected forms.

FEMININE **jō**-STEMS

317. Monosyllables: synn, *sin*; ġierd, *rod*.

	Singular			Plural	
N.	syn(n)	ġierd	N. A.	synna, -e	ġierda, -e
G.	synne	ġierde	G.	synna	ġierda
D. I.	synne	ġierde	D. I.	synnum	ġierdum
A.	synne	ġierde			

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **synn** was ***sunjō**. The **j** umlauted the radical vowel, and geminated the final consonant of a short radical syllable (see 251, 221). In Prehist OE ***synnu** the Nom. Sing. ending **-u** was then lost after the long syllable, as also in ***ġierdu**, originally long (see 256).

318. Polysyllables: byrþen, *burden*.

	Singular	Plural
N.	byrþen	byrþenna, -e
G.	byrþenne	byrþenna
D. I.	byrþenne	byrþennum
A.	byrþenne	byrþenna, -e

The **j** geminated the preceding consonant (see 221).

FEMININE **wō**-STEMS

319. **beadu**, *battle*; **mǣd**, *meadow*; **clēa**, *claw*.

Singular

N.	beadu	mǣd	clēa(w)
G.	beadwe	mǣdwe	clawe
D. I.	beadwe	mǣdwe	clawe
A.	beadwe	mǣdwe	clawe

Plural

N. A.	beadwa, -e	mǣdwa, -e	clēa
G.	beadwa	mǣdwa	clawa
D. I.	beadwum	mǣdwum	clēam

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **beadu** was ***baðwō**. In the Nom. Sing. *-**wō** became **-wu**, and **w** disappeared, because followed by the rounded vowel **-u**.

Nom. Sing. **-u** was lost after a long syllable, as in **mǣd** (see 256).

In the Nom. Sing. **clēa(w)**, ***clawu** > ***clau** > **clēa** (see 233). The (**w**) is by analogy from the oblique cases.

OTHER FEMININE NOUNS

320. Old English had also three groups of feminine nouns, of different history from the **ō**-stems, but usually showing in OE the same endings as the regular **ō**-stems. These nouns may, therefore, be considered here.

FEMININE STEMS IN **-iþō**

321. Prim Gmc formed from adjectives a number of abstract nouns in **-iþō**, e.g., ***strang-iþō**, OE **strengþu**, **-o**, *strength*.

Singular

Plural

N.	strengþu, -o, strengþ	strengþa, -e, -u, -o
G.	strengþe, -u, -o	strengþa
D. I.	strengþe, -u, -o	strengþum
A.	strengþe, -u, -o	strengþa, -e, -u, -o

*historically it has a different
Ending - reduced*

In Prehist OE the radical vowel was unlauded and the medial vowel syncopated (see 251; 260, 4). In the Nom. Sing., the **-u** sometimes appears, sometimes not. The **-u** of the Nom. Sing. was often levelled into the oblique cases.

FEMININE STEMS IN **-in**

322. Prim Gmc also formed abstract nouns from adjectives by means of the suffix **-in**. Cf. Goth **bráidei**, Gen. Sing. **bráideins**; ModHG **Breite**, *breadth*. In Prehist OE the **-i** of the stem was shortened to **-i**; **i** unlauded the radical vowel.

But very early the nouns with this stem were remodelled after the analogy of the **ō**-stems, the suffix **-in** giving way to Nom. Sing. **-u**, **-o**, G.D.A. **-e**. Later the **-u**, **-o** of the Nom. was levelled into the other cases of the Sing.

brædu, *breadth*

Singular		Plural	
N.	brædu , -o	N. A.	bræda , -e ; -u , -o
G. D. I. A.	bræde , -u , -o	G.	bræda
		D. I.	brædum

FEMININE STEMS IN **-ing-ō**, **-ung-ō**

323. Prim Gmc formed abstract nouns in **-ingō**, **-ungō**, **-angō**, chiefly from second weak verbs. In OE the ending **-ung** has been generalized, so that **-ing** is of comparatively, infrequent occurrence; **-ang** occurs rarely, if ever, in OE.

leornung, *learning*

Singular		Plural	
N.	leornung	N.	leornunga , -e
G.	leornunga , -e	G.	leornunga
D. I.	leornunga , -e	D. I.	leornungum
A.	leornunga , -e	A.	leornunga , -e

i-STEMS

324. The **i**-declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns. In OE the great majority of original **i**-stems appear with the endings of **a**- or **ō**-stems throughout.

Masculines: *wine, friend; ġiest, stranger, guest.*

	Singular		Plural	
N. A.	<u>wine</u>	ġiest	<u>wine</u> , -as	ġiestas
G.	wines	ġiestes	wina	ġiesta
D. I.	wine	ġieste	winum	ġiestum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **wine** and **ġiest** were ***winiz** and ***ġastiz**. The **-i** of the stem umlauted the radical vowel (***ġastiz** > ***ġæsti** > ***ġeasti** > ***ġiest**). Final **-i** was lost after a long radical syllable, but remained after a short radical syllable (see 255).

The endings **-es** of the Gen. Sing., **-as** of the Nom.-Acc. Plu., **-a** of the Gen. Plu., and **-um** of the Dat. Plu. are analogical endings from the masculine **a**-stems.

A few plurals, especially the names of tribes of peoples, retain the old ending **-e** of the Nom.-Acc. Plu: **Dene**, *Danes*; **Engle**, *(the) English*; **Mierce**, *the Mercians*; **Northymbre**, *the Northumbrians*; **Seaxe**, *the Saxons*. So also **ie de**, *men*; **wine**, *friends*; **ielfe**, *elves*; and **liode**, **lēode**, *peoples*.

A few words like **Dene** and **wine** sometimes retain the old Gen. Plu. **Deniġea** and **winiġea**.

325. Long Stemmed Feminines: *cwēn, queen.*

	Singular	Plural
N.	cwēn	<u>cwēne</u>
G.	cwēne	cwēna
D. I.	cwēne	cwēnum
A.	<u>cwēn</u> , (-e)	<u>cwēne</u>

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **cwēn** was ***kwæniz**.

The Acc. Sing. with no ending is a distinguishing mark of these nouns; the Acc. Sing. of Fem. **ō**-stems ends in **-e**.

The short feminine **i**-stems went over to the **ō**-stems in Prehist OE, so that only the umlaut of the radical vowel discloses their original declension.

326. Neuters: *spere, spear.*

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	spere	speru, -o
G.	speres	spera
D. I.	spere	sperum

The Gen. Sing. and all the cases of the plural are analogical formations after the neuter **a**-stems.

327. Long Stemmed Neuters: *flāsc, flesh.*

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	flāsc	flāsc
G.	flāsces	flāscā
D. I.	flāsce	flāscum

Like **flāsc** are declined a few long-stemmed neuters. Since the radical syllable is long, no endings occur in the Nom.-Acc. Sing. and Plu.

u-STEMS

328. This declension includes masculines, feminines, and neuters. The great majority of these nouns appear, however, with the endings of the **a**- or **ō**-stems.

Masculines: *sunu, son; feld, field.*

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	sunu, -o, -a feld	sunā feldā, -as
G.	suna feldā, feldes	suna feldā
D. I.	suna feldā, -e	sunum feldum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **sunu** was ***sunuz**. Only a small number of short-stemmed masculine **u**-stems are found in OE. Only **sunu** and **wudu** are fully declined.

In long stems, like **feld**, the **-u** of the Nom.-Acc. Sing. has disappeared.

329. Feminines: Only a few feminine **u**-stems remain in literary OE: **duru**, *door*; **hand** (**hond**), *hand*; **flōr**, *floor*; **cweorn**, *mill*.

	Singular		Plural
N. A.	duru	cweorn	dura, -u cweorna
G.	dura	cweorna	dura cweorna
D. I.	dura, -u	cweorna	durum cweornum

In Prim Gmc the Nom. Sing. of **duru** was ***duruz**. The long stems have lost the **-u** in the Nom.-Acc. Sing. (see 256).

330. Neuters: The neuter **u**-stems have all but disappeared in literary OE. The only trace is WS **fela**, **feola**, *much*, indeclinable.

CONSONANT STEMS

ORIGINAL CONSONANT STEMS

n-STEMS

331. The **n**-stems correspond to Latin nouns like **homo**, **hominis**; **nomen**, **nominis**. The **n**, which in OE looks like a case ending, belonged originally to the suffix which was added to the base of the word to form the stem (see 302, 306). The relation between the **n** and the case ending, however, is still apparent in the OE Gen. Plu.

Masculines: **hunta**, *hunter*; **frēa**, *lord*.

	Singular		Plural
N.	hunta	frēa	huntan frēan
G.	huntan	frēan	huntena frēana
D. I.	huntan	frēan	huntum frēa(u)m
A.	huntan	frēan	huntan frēan

332. **Feminines: tunge, tongue.**

	Singular	Plural
N.	tunge	tungan
G.	tungan	tungena
D. I.	tungan	tungum
A.	tungan	tungan

333. **Neuters:** Only two words in OE are invariably declined according to this declension: **ēage**, *eye*; **ēare**, *ear*; **wange**, *cheek*, is sometimes inflected as a neuter **n**-stem.

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	ēage	ēagan
G.	ēagan	ēagena
D. I.	ēagan	ēagum

NEUTER **iz-**, **az-**STEMS

334. The neuter **iz-**, **az-**stems³ correspond to the Latin neuters like **genus**, **generis**.

lamb (lomb), *lamb*.

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	lamb	lambru
G.	lambes	lambra
D. I.	lambe	lambrum

Like **lamb (lomb)** are declined **ċealf**, *calf*; **āġ**, *egg*; and occasionally **ċild**, *child*.

In OE these words show the characteristic **-r-** (< Gmc **-z-**) only in the plural. The other nouns which originally belonged here have the endings of other declensions.

For an account of the “**es**, **os**-declension,” see Wright, *Old English Grammar*, §419.

³ The OE grammars usually call these “**es-**, **os-**stems,” using the IE terminology.

r-STEMS

335. To this declension belong nouns of relationship in -r: **fæder**, *father*; **brōþor**, *brother*; **mōdor**, *mother*; **dohtor**, *daughter*; **sweostor**, *sister*, and the collective plurals **ġebrōþor**, -ru, *brethren*; **ġesweostor**, -ru, *sisters*.

	Singular		Plural
N.	fæder	brōþor	fæderas brōþor , brōþru
G.	fæder , -eres	brōþor	fædera brōþra
D.	fæder	brēþer	fæderum brōþrum
A.	fæder	brōþor	fæderas brōþor , -ru

(**dohtor** has Dat. Sing. **dehter**, Nom. Acc. Plu. **dehter**; **mōdor** has Dat. Sing. **mēder**, Nom. Acc. Plu. **mōdor**, -dru, -dra.

The umlaut in the Dat. Sing. and Nom. Plu. is due to the Prim Gmc endings -i and -iz; the forms were Dat. Sing. ***dohtri**; Nom. Plu. ***dohtriz**.

The umlauted radical vowel often appears in the Gen. Sing. of fems.: **mēder**, **dehter**.

STEMS IN -þ

336. In OE only four nouns belonging to this declension are found:

Masculines, **hæle**, **hæleþ**, *man*; **mōnaþ**, *month*; feminine, **mæġeþ**, *maiden*; neuter, **ealu**, *ale*.

	Singular		
N. A.	hæle , hæleþ	mōnaþ	mæġ(e)þ ealu
G.	hæleþes	mōnaþes	mæġ(e)þ ealoþ
D. I.	hæleþe	mōnaþe	mæġ(e)þ ealoþ
	Plural		
N. A.	hæleþ	mōnaþ	mæġ(e)þ
G.	hæleþa	mōn(e)þa	mæġ(e)þa ealeþa
D. I.	hæleþum	mōn(e)þum	mæġ(e)þum

The **-þ** is not phonetically regular in the Nom. Sing., but was levelled from the cases where it was regular. The old Nom. Sing. is preserved in **hæle** and **ealu**. The Gen. Sing. ending **-es** of **hæleþes** and **mōnaþes** is from the **a**-stems. These two words also have Nom. Plu. in **-as**, **hæleþas** and **mōneþas**.

ROOT CONSONANT STEMS

337. In this class the primitive case endings were attached directly to the final consonant of the root or base. The class includes masculines, feminines, and one neuter. Examples are: masculines, **mann**, *man*; **fōt**, *foot*; feminines, **bōc**, *book*; **burg**, *city*.

		Singular		
N. A.	mann	fōt	bōc	burg
G.	mannes	fōtes	bōce, bēc	byriġ
D. I.	menn	fēt	bēc	byrġ, byriġ
		Plural		
N. A.	menn	fēt	bēc	byrġ, byriġ
G.	manna	fōta	bōca	burga
D. I.	mannum	fōtum	bōcum	burgum

Other nouns belonging to this declension are **tōþ**, *tooth*; Nom. Plu. **tēþ**, masc.; and **gōs**, *goose*, Nom. Plu. **gēs**, fem.

In Prim Gmc the Dat. Sing. ended in **-i** (***fōti**), the Nom. Plu. in **-iz**. The **-i** and **-iz** were lost after umlauting the radical vowel (see 255). The umlauted forms of the Gen. Sing. in feminines are historically regular; those of the Acc. Plu. in masculines and feminines are analogical after the Nom. Plu.

338. **Neuter**: The only neuter of this class is the word **scrūd**, *garment*.

	Singular	Plural
N. A.	scrūd	scrūd
G.	scrūdes	scrūda
D. I.	scrȳd	scrūdum

The only trace of the original inflection in this word is the Dat.-Inst. Sing. **scrȳd**. Otherwise it is declined like a neuter **a-stem**.

DERIVATIVE CONSONANT STEMS

nd-STEMS

339. The **-nd** declension consists of original present participles used as nouns: **frēond**, *friend*; **hettend**, *enemy*.

Singular

N. A.	frēond	N. A.	hettend
G.	frēondes	G.	hettendes
D. I.	frīend, frēonde	D. I.	hettende

Plural

N. A.	frīend, frēond, frēondas	hettend, hettende, hettendas
G.	frēonda	hettendra
D. I.	frēondum	hettendum

Prim Gmc Dat. Sing. ***frijondi** > Prehist OE ***friondi** > **frīend**.

Prim Gmc Nom. Plu. ***frijondiz** > Prehist OE ***friondi** > **frīend**.

The ending **-e** of the Nom. Plu. **hettende** is from the adjective (pronominal) declension, as is also the ending **-ra** of the Gen. Plu. **hettendra**.

Pronouns

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

340. First Person.

Singular	Dual	Plural
N. iċ	wit	wē
G. mīn	uncer	ūser, ūre
D. mē	unc	ūs
A. mec, mē	uncit, unc	ūsiċ, ūs

341. Second Person.

	Singular	Dual	Plural
N.	þū	ġit	ġē
G.	þīn	īncēr	ēower, īower
D.	þē	īnc	ēow, īow
A.	þec, þē	īncit, inc	ēowīc, ēow, īow

342. Third Person.

	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	hē	hēo, hīe	hit
G.	his	hiere, hire, hyre	his
D.	him	hiere, hire, hyre	him
A.	hine	hīe, hī, hȳ	hit

Plural—All Genders

N.	hīe, hī, hȳ; hēo, hīo
G.	hiera, hira, hyra; heora, hiora
D.	him; heom
A.	hīe, hī, hȳ; hēo, hīo

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

343. Old English did not have an independent reflexive pronoun. The corresponding forms of the personal pronouns were used for the reflexive pronoun.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

344. Possessive pronouns are declined as strong adjectives. They are: **mīn**, *mine*; **þīn**, *thine*; **sīn**, *his, her*, etc.; **uncer**, *of us two*; **īncēr**, *of you two*; **ūre**, **ūser**, *our*; **ēower**, **īower**, *your*. In addition, the genitives of the third personal pronoun are used to indicate possession.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

345. The Demonstrative *sē, sēo (sīo), þæt, that*.

	Singular		Plural
Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
N. <i>sē</i>		<i>sēo, sīo</i>	<i>þæt</i>
G. <i>þæs</i>		<i>þære</i>	<i>þā</i>
D. <i>þām, þā</i>		<i>þære</i>	<i>þām, þā</i>
A. <i>þone, þæne, þane</i>		<i>þā</i>	<i>þæt</i>
I. <i>þȳ, þon, þē</i>			<i>þā</i>

346. The Demonstrative *þēs, þēos (þīos), þis, this*.

	Singular	
Masculine		Feminine
N. <i>þēs</i>		<i>þēos, þīos</i>
G. <i>þis(s)es</i>		<i>þisse, þis(se)re</i>
D. <i>þis(s)um</i>		<i>þisse, þis(se)re</i>
A. <i>þisne</i>		<i>þīs</i>
I. <i>þȳs</i>		<i>þisse, þis(se)re</i>

Plural
All Genders

N. <i>þās</i>
G. <i>þissa, þeossa, þissera</i>
D. <i>þis(s)um, þys(s)um, þeos(s)um</i>
A. <i>þās</i>

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

347. No relative pronoun existed in IE or Gmc. The relative clause construction was a late independent development in the separate languages.

I. In OE the word *þe* was used as a relative pronoun. It is found

(a) by itself, e.g., *sē stān þe, the stone that (the builders rejected)*;

(b) in combination with the various forms of *sē*, *sēo*, *þæt*, e.g., *Aⁿgustinum þone þe hī ġecoren hæfdon*, *Augustine, whom they had chosen*;

(c) occasionally in combination with a form of the personal pronoun, e.g., *Fæder ūre, þū þe eart on heofenum*, *Our Father, who art in heaven*.

II. The demonstrative *sē*, *sēo*, *þæt* may be used as a relative pronoun, e.g., *þā fēng Nero tō riċe, sē forlēt Britena*, *then came Nero to the throne, who lost Britain*.

III. *swylċ*, *such*, is sometimes used as a relative pronoun, e.g., *hē sēce swylcne hlāford, swylcne hē wile*, *let him seek such a lord as he may choose*.

IV. *swā*, *so*, *as*, is sometimes used as a relative, e.g., *swylcra yrmþa, swā þū unc ær scrife*, *of such miseries as thou before assigned to us*.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

348. The simple interrogative pronoun has two genders, there being no independent form for the feminine. It is declined only in the singular.

	Masculine	Neuter
N.	<i>hwā</i>	<i>hwæt</i>
G.	<i>hwæs</i>	<i>hwæs</i>
D.	<i>hwæm, hwām</i>	<i>hwæm, hwām</i>
A.	<i>hwone, hwane, hwæne</i>	<i>hwæt</i>
I.	<i>hwī, hwȳ, hwon</i>	<i>hwī, hwȳ, hwon</i>

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

349. OE has a variety of words used as indefinite pronouns. Interrogative pronouns are often used as indefinite pronouns: *hwā* (*who?*), *someone*, *anyone*; *hwæt* (*what?*), *something*, *anything*; *hwelċ*, *hwilċ* (*which?*), *someone*; *hwæþer* (*who of two?*).

someone. These pronouns are given a more general meaning by being used with **swā** . . . **swā**, e.g., **swā hwā swā**, *whoever*.

350. Other indefinite pronouns are made from **hwā**, **hwæt**, **hwelc**, **hwæþer** by composition:

(1) With the indeclinable **hwugu**, **hugu**: **hwæt(h)wugu**, *something*, **hwelc(h)wugu**, *anyone*.

(2) With the prefix **ġe-**: **ġehwā**, *everyone*, **ġehwelc**, *everyone*, **ġehwæþer**, *each of two*.

(3) With the prefix **ā-**: **āhwā**, *anyone*, **āhwæt**, *anything*, **āhwæþer**, **āwþer**, **āuþer**, **āþer**, **ōwþer**, *either*, *each*.

(4) With the prefix **nā** < **ne** + **ā-** (negative): **nāhwæþer**, *neither*.

(5) With the prefix **æġ** < **ā** + ***ġi-**: **æġhwā**, *any one*; **æġhwæt**, *anything*; **æġhwæþer**, *any one*.

(6) With **ā-**, **ō-**, or **nā-**, **nō** + **wiht**: **āwiht**, **āuht**, **āuht**, **āht**, *anything*.

ōwiht, **ōwuht**, **ōht**, *anything*.

nāwiht, **nōwiht**, **nāht**, **nōht**, *nothing*.

(7) With the verb **nāt** ("I know not") prefixed to **hwā**, **hwelc**: **nāthwā**, **nāthwelc**, *anyone whatever* (literally, *I know not who, which*).

(8) Indefinite pronouns are made also from numerals: **nān** (< **ne** + **ān**), *no one*; **ōþer**, *another*, *other*. These, together with the indefinite **swelc**, **swilc**, *such a one*; **sum**, *some one*, are declined like strong adjectives.

(9) The substantive **man(n)**, *one*, *they*, *people*, *men*, is also used as an indefinite pronoun.

Adjectives

351. For an explanation of the use of the strong and the weak adjective declensions, see Chapter VII, 77.

STRONG DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

a-, ō-STEMS

352. Short-stemmed adjective: **sum**, *some*.

Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine Neuter
N.	sum	sumu sum
G.	sumes	sumre sumes
D.	sumum	sumre sumum
A.	sumne	sume sum
I.	sume	sumre sume
N. A.	sum	Plural sumu, -e
G.	sum	suma, -e sum a
D. I.	suma	sumum sumrum

353. Long-stemmed adjective: **gōd**, *good*.

Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine Neuter
N.	gōd	gōd gōd
G.	gōdes	gōdre gōdes
D.	gōdum	gōdre gōdum
A.	gōdne	gōde gōd
I.	gōde	gōdre gōde
Plural		
N. A.	gōde	gōda, gōde gōd, gōde
G.	gōdra	gōdra gōdra
D. I.	gōdum	gōdum gōdum

The ending **-e** of the Nom.-Acc. Plu. Neut. is after the analogy of the masculines and feminines.

The Nom. Sing. Fem. and the Nom.-Acc. Plu. Neut. of **gōd** lost the final **-u** because of the long radical syllable.

Forms like **hwate**, Nom. Plu. of **hwæt**, have **a** (instead of **æ**) by analogy with such plural forms as **hwatu**, **hwata**, **hwatum**.

354. Adjectives in -h: *hēah*, *high*.

Because of the disappearance of intervocalic **h** in OE, many forms of **hēah** show contraction (see 263). Such are Nom. Sing. Fem. **hēa** (<***hēahu**); Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. **hēas**; Dat. Sing. Masc. and Neut. **hēa(u)m**; Nom.-Acc. Plu. **hēa**. Forms like Gen.-Dat. Sing. Fem. **hēa(r)re**, Gen. Plu. **hēa(r)ra**, Acc. Sing. Masc. **hēa(n)ne**, frequently have **-rr-**, **-nn-**, by assimilation of **-hr-**, **-hn-**.

355. Polysyllabic Adjectives.

Polysyllabic adjectives are to be divided into two classes: (1) those with short radical syllables, like **maniġ**, *many*, **open**, *open*, **coren**, *chosen*; (2) those with long radical syllables, like **hāliġ**, *holy*, **lȳtel**, *little*, **holpen**, *helped*.

(1) Those with short radical syllables retain the vowel of the second syllable throughout. The endings of the strong declension are the same as those of *long* monosyllabic adjectives like **gōd**, *good*.

(2) Those with long radical syllables when declined strong usually do not retain the vowel of the second syllable if the endings begin with a vowel. Thus the strong Masc. Sing. of **hāliġ** is declined Nom. **hāliġ**, Gen. **hālġes**, Dat. **hālġum**, Acc. **hālġne**, Inst. **hālġe**. When declined weak, the vowel of the second syllable rarely appears. Thus the weak Masc. Sing. is declined, Nom. **hālga**, Gen. Dat. Acc. Inst. **hālġan** (see 258, 260). The endings of the strong declension are the same as those of short monosyllabic adjectives like **sum**, *some*.

Analogy: Forms like **hālġes**, **hālġum**, **hālġe**, **hālġan**, are due to the analogy of forms like **hāliġ**, **hālġne**, which kept the vowel of the second syllable.

ja-, jō-STEMS

356. In adjectives with stems originally ending in **-ja**, **-jō**, the **-j-** umlauted the radical vowel. When the radical syllable

was originally short, as in **midd**, *middle*, **nytt**, *useful*, the final consonant had already been geminated in WGmc. Adjectives with originally short stems are declined like the **a-**, **ō-**stem adjectives, e.g., **gōd**; adjectives with originally long radical syllables are declined like **grēne**, *green*.

357. **grēne**, *green*.

Singular			
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	grēne	grēnu, -o	grēne
G.	grēnes	grēnre	grēnes
D.	grēnum	grēnre	grēnum
A.	grēnne	grēne	grēne
I.	grēne	grēnre	grēne
Plural			
N. A.	grēne	grēna, -e	grēnu
G.	grēnra	grēnra	grēnra
D. I.	grēnum	grēnum	grēnum

358. **wa-**, **wō-**stems: **ġearu**, *ready*.

Singular			
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	ġearu, -o	ġearu, -o	ġearu, -o
G.	ġearwes	ġearore	ġearwes
D.	ġearwum	ġearore	ġearwum
A.	ġearone	ġearwe	ġearu, -o
I.	ġearwe	ġearore	ġearwe
Plural			
N. A.	ġearwe	ġearwa, -e	ġearu, -o
G.	ġearora	ġearora	ġearora
D. I.	ġearwum	ġearwum	ġearwum

359. The **i-**stem adjectives, which were few in number, in OE take the same endings as the **ja-**, **jo-**stem adjectives like

grēne. Thus are declined **bryċe**, *brittle*; **ġemyne**, *mindful*; **swiċe**, *deceitful*; **bliþe**, *joyful*; **clāne**, *clean*; **swēte**, *sweet*, etc.

u-STEMS

360. Only slight traces of **u**-stem adjectives are found in OE. **cwīc**, *alive*, and **wlæc**, *tepid*, occasionally have the Nom. Sing. Masc. **cwucu**, **wlacu**; and **cwīc** sometimes has the Acc. Sing. Masc. **cucune**. As a rule, however, these adjectives are declined throughout like **a**-, **ō**-stems.

DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES

361. Present Participle.

The present participle may be declined strong or weak. When declined strong, it is declined like a long-stemmed **ja**-, **jō**-stem.

When used predicatively, the present participle is usually uninflected; **ġiefende** is used as masculine, feminine, or neuter, singular or plural.

362. Past Participle.

The past participle is declined strong or weak in accordance with the same rules and with the same endings as an ordinary adjective.

WEAK DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

363. **gōda**, *good*.

	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
	N. gōda	gōde	gōde	N.A. gōdan
G.D.I.	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan	G. gōdena , gōdra
A.	gōdan	gōdan	gōde	D.I. gōdum

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

364. The suffix which forms the comparative degree of the adjective appears in OE as **-ra**. Prim Gmc used two suffixes, **-iz-** and **-ōz-**, to which were added the case endings of the weak adjective. In WGmc, **-iza** became **-ira**, and **-ōza** became **-ora**; in Prehist OE **-i-** of **-ira** umlauted the vowel of the radical syllable. Most adjectives in Gmc and Prehist OE ended in **-ōza** (**-ora**), but after the period of umlaut had passed, **-ra** (<***-ira** <***-iza**) completely supplanted **-ora**. This is the reason for the prevailing lack of umlaut in OE adjectives on the one hand, and the regular ending **-ra** on the other.

earm, *poor*—**earmra**;

lēof, *dear*—**lēofra**;

glæd, *glad*—**glædra**;

ġearu, *ready*—**ġearora** (**-o-** < vocalized **-w-**);

nēah, *near*—**nēahra**, **nēarra** (**-rr-** from assimilation of **-hr-**).

365. Only a few adjectives in OE have umlaut of the radical syllable.

brād, *broad*—**brædra**, beside **brādra**; **eald**, *old*—**ieldra**;
feorr, *far*—**fierra**; **ġeong**, *young*—**ġingra**; **grēat**, *great*—**grīetra**;
hēah, *high*—**hīehra**, **hierra**, beside **hēahra**; **lang**, *long*—**lengra**;
sceort, *short*—**scyrtra**.

The comparative forms in OE were declined weak.

THE SUPERLATIVE

366. The two suffixes which formed the superlative degree of the adjective appear in OE as **-est** and **-ost**. In Prim Gmc these suffixes were **-ist** and **-ōst**. The ending **-ost** is the most frequent in literary OE. The adjectives which had the Prim Gmc ending **-ist** were comparatively few in number; they show umlaut of the radical vowel.

Examples:

(a) Superlative in **-ost(a)**; **earmost(a)**, **lēofost(a)**, **glæ-dost(a)**.

(b) Superlative in **-est(a)**; **ieldest(a)**, **fierrest(a)**, **ġingest(a)**.
The superlative forms in OE were frequently declined weak.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

367. In the case of some adjectives, the comparative and superlative are formed from a different root than that of the positive.

gōd, *good*—**bet(e)ra**, *bettra*—**bet(e)st(a)**; **sēlra**, *sēlla*.

lȳtel, *little*—**lāssa**—**lāst(a)**.

micel, *great*—**māra**—**māst(a)**.

yfel, *evil*—**wiersa**—**wierrest(a)**, **wierst(a)**.

368. In a few cases comparative and superlative adjectives were formed on the basis of prepositions and adverbs. In such cases the positive degree does not exist as an adjective.

(**feorr**), *far*—**fierra**—**fierrest(a)**;

(**nēah**), *near*—**nēar(r)a**—**nīehst(a)**;

(**ǣr**), *earlier*—**ǣrresta**;

(**fore**), *before*—**furþra**—**fyrest(a)**, *the first*.

369. **forma**, *first* (cf. **fore**, *before*); **hindema**, *hindmost* (cf. **hindan**, *behind*); **meduma**, *average* (cf. **midd**, *middle of*), and other similar words, were originally superlatives formed with the suffix **-umo**. Many of these words have acquired thru analogy the ending **-est**, so that the superlative ending appears to be **-mest**. The comparative, when it occurs, usually ends in **-erra**.

Most of the adjectives in this group are like those of the preceding group in that they are formed on the basis of prepositions and adverbs, and that no positive degree exists.

(æfter), <i>after</i>	æfterra	æftemest(a)
(ēast), <i>eastward</i>	ēasterra	ēastmest(a)
(fore), <i>before</i>		forma , fyrresta
(hindan), <i>behind</i>		hindema

(inne), <i>within</i>	innerra	innemest(a)
(læt), <i>late</i>	lætra	lætemesta
(midd), <i>middle</i>		meduma, medema, mid- mesta
(niþan), <i>below</i>	niþerra	ni(o)þemest(a)
(norþ), <i>northwards</i>	norþerra, nyrþra	norþmesta
(siþ), <i>late</i>	siþra	siþmesta
(sūþ), <i>southwards</i>	sūþerra, sýþerra	sūþmest(a)
(ufan), <i>above</i>	uferra, yferra	ufemest(a), yfemest(a)
(ūte), <i>without</i>	ūterra, ȳterra	ūt(e)mest(a), ȳt(e)- mest(a)
(west), <i>westward</i>	westerra	westmesta

NUMERALS

370. The cardinal and ordinal numbers in OE are as follows:

Cardinals	Ordinals
1. ān	forma, formesta, fyrmest, fyrst, ærest
2. twēġen, tū, twā	ōþer, æfterra
3. þrie, þrio, þrēo	þrida
4. fīower, fēower	fēowerþa, fēorþa
5. fif	fifta
6. siex, six	siexta
7. siofon, seofon	seofōþa, seofeþa
8. eahta	eahtoþa, -eþa, -eoþa
9. nigon	nigoþa, -eþa, -eoþa
10. tīen, tȳn	tēoþa
11. endlefan, -leofan, -lufan	endlefta, ellefta
12. twelf	twelfta
13. þrēotīene, -tēne, -tȳne	þrēotēoþa
14. fēowertiene	fēowertēoþa
15. fiftiene	fiftēoþa

16. siextiene	siertēoþa
17. seofontiene	seofontēoþa
18. eahtatiene	eahtatēoþa
19. nigontiene	nigontēoþa
20. twēntig	twēntigoþa, -tigþa, -tiga
21. ān ond twēntig	ān ond twēntigoþa
30. þritig	þritigoþa
40. fēowertig	fēowertigoþa
50. fiftig	fiftigoþa
60. siextig	siextigoþa
70. (hund)seofontig	(hund)seofontigoþa
80. (hund)eahtatig	(hund)eahtigoþa
90. (hund)nigontig	(hund)nigontigoþa
100. hundtēontig, hund, hundred	hundtēontigoþa
110. hundendlefantig, hundælleftig	hundendleftigoþa
120. hundtwelftig	hundtweiþa
200. twā (tū) hund	
1000. þūsend	

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

371. **ān**, *one*, which is sometimes a numeral and sometimes an adjective, is declined with the endings of the strong declension of the adjective; the Acc. Sing. Masc., however, occurs in two forms, **āne**, and **æne** (<***ānina**), the latter occurring more frequently. The Masc.-Neut. Inst. Sing. is **āne** or **āne**. Plural forms are used in the sense of *only*, and in the phrase **ānra ġehwylc**, *each one*. **āna**, declined weak, means *alone*.

372. **twēġen**, *two*, is declined as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.A.	twēġen	twā	tū, twā
G.	twēġa, twēġra	twēġa, twēġra	twēġa, twēġra

D.I. *twām, twām* *twām, twām* *twām, twām*
 Like *twēġen* is declined *bēġen*, *both*; Fem. *bā*, Neut. *bū*,
 G *bēġra*, D. *bām, bām*.

The forms of the N.-A. are used almost interchangeably in all genders. Thus *twā* is feminine, but is sometimes used as a neuter, sometimes also as a masculine. With two nouns of different gender, the neuter form is usually employed.

373. *þrie*, *three*, is declined as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.A.	<i>þrie, þri</i>	<i>þrēo</i>	<i>þrēo</i>
G.	<i>þrēora</i>	<i>þrēora</i>	<i>þrēora</i>
D.I.	<i>þrim</i>	<i>þrim</i>	<i>þrim</i>

The other cardinal numbers are generally not inflected. They are chiefly used either as indeclinable adjectives or as nouns governing the genitive; for example, *on fif dagum*, *in five days*; *þritiġ daga*, *thirty days*.

374. The ordinals, except *ōþer*, are declined like weak adjectives. *ōþer* is declined as a strong adjective.

Adverbs

375. Most adverbs in OE are formed from adjectives, or are case forms of adjectives or nouns used adverbially.

1. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives by the ending *-e*: *heard*, *hard*—*hearde*, *boldly*. If the adjective ends in *-e*, the adverb is identical with the adjective; *bliþe*, *joyful*—*bliþe*, *joyfully*.

2. Many adjectives were formed from nouns by the addition of the suffix *-liċ*. Thus the noun *frēond*, *friend*, was the basis of the adjective *frēond-liċ*, *friendly*. From such adjectives

were formed adverbs by the addition of the regular adverbial ending **-e**; thus **frēond-liċ-e**, *in a friendly manner*. The whole ending **-liċ-e** then came to be felt to be an adverbial ending, and was freely attached to adjectives also; thus, **eornost**, *earnest*, was made into an adverb **eornostlice**.

3. Adverbs are formed from adjectives and other words by means of the suffixes **-unga**, **-inga**; —**eallunga**, *entirely*, from **eall**, *all*; **hōlinga**, *slanderosly*, from **hōlian**, *to slander*.

4. The case forms of adjectives and nouns are frequently used adverbially.

a. Acc. Sing.:

eall, *altogether, completely*; **lȳtel**, **lȳt**, *little*; **ġenōġ**, *enough*; **fyrn**, **ġefyrn**, *formerly*; **full**, *fully*; **ealneġ**, *always* (<***ealne weg**); and compounds of **-weard**, originally an adjective: **ūpweard**, *upward*; **norþ(e)weard**, *northward*; and **nīþerweard**, *downward*.

b. Gen. Sing.:

dæg-es, *daily, by day*; **orþances**, *heedlessly*; **selfwilles**, *voluntarily*. This **-es** then came to be felt to be an adverbial ending, and was added to feminines, as in **nīdes**, *needs, of necessity*; **niht-es**, *nightly, by night*. The Gen. Sing. used adverbially was also combined with prepositions as in **tō-āfen-es**, *till evening*; **tō-ġif-es**, *freely, gratis*; **tō-midd-es**, *amidst, among*.

c. Gen. Plu.: **ġēara**, *of yore*.

d. Dat.-Inst. Sing.:

fācne, *very*; **sāre**, *sorely*; **dæg-hwām**, *daily*; **miċle**, *much*.

e. Dat.-Inst. Plu., especially in forms with **-mālum**: **ġēardagum**, *in days of yore, formerly*; **hwil-tīdum**, *at times*; **brymmum**, *powerfully*; **drop-mālum**, *drop by drop*; **stund-mālum**, *now and then*; **styċce-mālum**, *here and there, piece-meal*; **miċlum**, *very*; **lȳtlum**, *little*.

376. The chief adverbs of place are the following:

Rest	Motion towards	Motion from
feorr(an) , <i>far</i>	feorr	feorran
foran , <i>before</i>	fore	foran
hēr , <i>here</i>	hider	heonan
hindan , <i>behind</i>	hinder	hindan
hwær , <i>where</i>	hwider	hwanon
inne , innan , <i>within</i>	in(n)	innan
nēah , <i>near</i>	nēar	nēan
niōþan , <i>beneath</i>	niþer	niōþan
þær , <i>there</i>	þider	þanan , þonan
uppe , up , <i>above</i>	up(p)	uppan
ūte , ūtan , <i>outside</i>	ūt	ūtan

377. The suffix **-an** was added to other adverbs to signify motion from: **sūþ**, *southwards*, **sūþan**, *from the south*; **ēastan**, **norþan**, **westan**, are thus formed.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

378. The comparative of adverbs ends in **-or**; **swīþe**, *exceedingly*, **swīþor**; **ġeorne**, *eagerly*, **ġeornor**.

The superlative ends in **-ost**, e.g., **swīþost**, **ġeornost**.

A few OE adverbs show traces of the comparative in **-iz**. These are monosyllables and can be recognised as comparatives only by the umlaut. Examples are: **leng**, *longer*; **sēft**, *softer*; **bet** (<*batiz), *better*. These adverbs form the superlative in **-(e)st**: **lengest**, **betst**. **ǣr** (<*airiz), *earlier*, **ǣrest**, *earliest*, though it has no positive, belongs to this group.

Verbs

379. OE, like the other Gmc languages, has two kinds of verbs, strong and weak.

The strong verbs form the preterit tense and the past participle by means of a change of the radical vowel (ablaut), e.g., Pres. Inf. **findan**, Pret. Sing. **fand**, Pret. Plu. **fundon**, Past Participle, **funden**.

The weak verbs form their preterit by means of a suffix containing **d** or **t**.

The intensive and perfective prefix **ġe-** sometimes seems to be used as a past participial prefix. But **ġe-** is prefixed to so many verbs in the present and preterit, and is so frequently lacking in the past participle, that it cannot be regarded as a fixed past participial prefix.

380. The OE verb has (in addition to the infinitive and participles) three moods, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. It has two tenses, the present and the preterit (or past), and each tense has two numbers, singular and plural.

381. To some extent new perfect compound tenses appear in OE; they are formed by a combination of the past participle of intransitive verbs with **wesan**, of transitive verbs with **haban**:

Ðū mē forlæred hæfst, *Thou hast seduced me.*

Norþhymbre ond Eastengle hæfdon Ælfrēde cyninge āþas ġeseald, *The Northumbrians and East-Angles had given oaths to King Alfred.*

Ðā wæs forð cumen ġēoc æfter gyrne, *Then was come forth comfort after grief.*

382. The OE verb has no special form for the passive voice. For this voice are used compound forms made by combining the past participle with **bēon**, **wesan**, or **weorþan**.

Bēon ðā oferhýdegan ealle ġescende, *May the proud be confounded.*

þæs ġēares wērun ofslæġene nigon eorlas, *That year were slain nine earls.*

þæs ġēares wurdon nigon folcġefeoht ġefohten, That year nine battles were fought.

383. The principal parts of a strong verb are the Infinitive, the Preterit Indicative 1 Singular, the Preterit Indicative Plural, and the Past Participle.

The principal parts of a weak verb are the Infinitive, the Preterit Indicative 1 Singular and the Past Participle.

STRONG VERBS

384. In OE, as in the other Gmc languages, there are seven classes of strong verbs (frequently called "ablaut series"), each of the first six classes being marked by a distinctive series of vowel changes.

CLASS I

385. The OE ablaut of Class I was: *ī; ā; i; i*. The Prim Gmc ablaut was: *ī; ai; i; i*. Representative verbs are:

<i>bīdan, await</i>	<i>bād</i>	<i>bidon</i>	<i>biden</i>
<i>bītan, bite</i>	<i>bāt</i>	<i>biton</i>	<i>biten</i>
<i>drīfan, drive</i>	<i>drāf</i>	<i>drifon</i>	<i>drifen</i>
<i>ġewītan, go</i>	<i>ġewāt</i>	<i>ġewiton</i>	<i>ġewiten</i>
<i>rīdan, ride</i>	<i>rād</i>	<i>ridon</i>	<i>riden</i>
<i>rīsan, rise</i>	<i>rās</i>	<i>rison</i>	<i>risen</i> ⁴
<i>stīgan, go</i>	<i>stāh</i>	<i>stigon</i>	<i>stīgen</i>
<i>scīnan, shine</i>	<i>scān</i>	<i>scinon</i>	<i>scinen</i>

386. Verbs showing grammatical change (see 208-210):

<i>snīðan, cut</i>	<i>snāð,</i>	<i>snidon,</i>	<i>sniden.</i>
<i>liðan, go</i>	<i>lāð,</i>	<i>lidon,</i>	<i>liden.</i>
<i>scriðan, go</i>	<i>scrāð,</i>	<i>scridon,</i>	<i>scriden.</i>

⁴ *risan* lacks grammatical change in the Pret. Plu. and Past Part. The *s* has been levelled from the first two forms into the last two.

387 Contract Verbs:

tēon (<*tīhan), <i>censure</i>	tāh,	tigon,	tīgen ⁵ .
þēon (<*þīhan), <i>thrive</i>	þāh,	þigon,	þīgen. ⁵
wrēon (<*wrihan), <i>cover</i>	wrāh,	wrigon,	wriġen. ⁵

CLASS II

388. The OE ablaut of Class II was: ēo (ū); ēa; u; o. The Prim Gmc ablaut was: eu (ū); au; u; u. Representative verbs are:

bēodan, <i>command</i>	bēad	budon	boden
ċēowan, <i>chew</i>	ċēaw	cuwon	cowen
crēopan, <i>creep</i>	crēap	crupon	cropen
drēogan, <i>endure</i>	drēag	drugon	drogen
ġēotan, <i>pour</i>	ġēat	guton	goten
scēotan, <i>shoot</i>	scēat	scuton	scoten

389. Verbs with ū in the present:⁶

brūcan, <i>enjoy</i>	brēac	brucon	brocen
būgan, <i>bow</i>	bēag	bugon	bogen
lūcan, <i>lock</i>	lēac	lucon	locen
lūtan, <i>bow</i>	lēat	luton	loten
scūfan, <i>shove</i>	scēaf	scufon	scofen

390. Verbs with Grammatical Change:

ċēosan, <i>choose</i>	ċēas	curon	coren
frēosan, <i>freeze</i>	frēas	fruron	froren
sēoðan, <i>boil</i>	sēað	sudon	soden
drēosan, <i>fall</i>	drēas	druron	droren
lēosan, <i>lose</i>	lēas	luron	loren

⁵ These verbs also form their principal parts according to Class II: tēor, tēah, tugon, togen; þēon, þēah, þugon, þogen; wrēon, wrēah, wrugon, wrogen, þēon also has some parts formed according to Class III: Pret. Plur. þungon. Past Part. þungen; see note 93, Chapter XXIV..

⁶ Verbs with ū belong to a class called "aorist presents."

391. Contract Verbs:

tēon (<*tēohan), <i>draw</i>	tēah	tugon	togen
flēon (<*flēohan), <i>flee</i>	flēah	flugon	flogen

CLASS III

392. The Prim Gmc ablaut of Class III was: **e; a; u; u**. Strong verbs of Class III have a radical syllable ending in two consonants, of which the first is nearly always a nasal (**m, n**) or a liquid (**l, r**); they fall into four sub-classes:

393. (1) Verbs with radical syllable ending in nasal plus consonant:

bindan , <i>bind</i>	band (bond)	bundon	bunden
drincan , <i>drink</i>	dranc (dronc)	druncon	druncen
ġelimpan , <i>happen</i>	ġelamp (ġelomp)	ġelumpon	ġelumpen
irnan , <i>run</i>	arn (orn)	urnon	urnen ⁷
onġinnan , <i>begin</i>	ongann (ongonn)	ongunnon	ongunnen
singan , <i>sing</i>	sang (song)	sungon	sungen
swimman , <i>swim</i>	swamm (swomm)	swummon	swummen
winnan , <i>strive</i>	wann (wonn)	wunnon	wunnen

394. (2) Verbs with radical syllable ending in **l** plus consonant:

delfan , <i>dig</i>	dealf	dulfon	dolfen
ġieldan , <i>yield</i>	ġeald	ġuldon	ġolden
ġiellan , <i>yell</i>	ġeall	ġullon	ġollen

⁷ In Gmc this verb was *rinnan, *rann, *runnun, *runnanaz. In Prehist OE occurred metathesis (transposition) of the **r**, resulting in OE **irnan**, **arn urnon**, **urnen**.

ġielpan , <i>boast</i>	ġealp	gulpon	golpen
helpan , <i>help</i>	healp	hulpon	holpen
meltan , <i>melt</i>	mealt	multon	molten
melcan , <i>milk</i>	mealc	mulcon	molcen
swelgan , <i>swell</i>	swealg	swulgon	swolgen

395. Contract Verb:

fēolan (< *felhan), fealh <i>pierce</i>	fulgon (fǣlon ⁸)	fōlen ⁹
--	--	---------------------------

396. (3) Verbs with radical syllable ending in **r** or **h** plus consonant:

ċeorfan , <i>carve</i>	ċearf	curfon	corfen
feohtan , <i>fight</i>	feahrt	fuhton	fohten
hweorfan , <i>turn</i>	hwearf	hwurfon	hworfen
weorpan , <i>cast</i>	wearp	wurpon	worpen

397. With Grammatical Change:

weorðan , <i>become</i>	wearð	wurdon	worden
--------------------------------	--------------	---------------	---------------

398. (4) Other Verbs:

brēġdan , <i>move</i> <i>swiftly</i>	bræġd	brugdon	brogden
berstan , ¹⁰ <i>burst</i>	bærst ¹⁰	burston	borsten
frīġnan , <i>inquire</i> , <i>ascertain</i>	fræġn	frugnon	frugnen

⁸ Pret. Plu. **fǣlon** is due to analogy with fourth ablaut series forms like **stǣlon**.

⁹ Past Part. **fōlen**, instead of *fōlgen, is due to an early levelling of **h** from Pres. and Pret. Sing. *folhen then became **fōlen**.

¹⁰ In Gmc this verb was *brestan, *brast, *brustun, *brustanaz; *brast became OE **bræst**; after the period of Breaking, occurred metathesis of **r**, resulting in OE **berstan**, **bærst**, etc.

murnan , ¹¹ <i>mourn</i>	mearn	murnon	
spurnan , ¹¹ <i>tread down</i>	spearn	spurnon	spornen

CLASS IV

399. The Prim Gmc ablaut of Class IV was: **e**; **a**; **ǣ**; **u**.

Strong verbs of Class IV have stems ending in a single consonant, nearly always a liquid (**l**, **r**) or a nasal.

Representative verbs are:

beran , <i>bear</i>	bær	bǣron	boren
scieran , <i>shear</i>	scear	scēaron	scoren
stelan , <i>steal</i>	stæl	stǣlon	stolen

400. One verb originally belonged to Class V:

brecan , <i>break</i>	bræc	brǣcon	brocen
------------------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------

401. Two verbs had a radical syllable ending in a nasal:

niman , ¹² <i>seize, take</i>	nam (nōm)	nōmon (nāmon)	numen
cuman , ¹³ <i>come</i>	cōm (cwōm)	cōmon (cwōmon)	cumen (cymen)

¹¹ **murnan** and **spurnan** are "aorist present" verbs.

¹² Thye **i** of **niman** is due to the OE change of WGmc **e** to **i** if followed by **m** (see 226). The **ō** of **nōmon** is due to the development of WGmc **ǣ** to **ō** if followed by a nasal (see 230); **nōm** has **ō** by analogy with **nōmon**. The WGmc Past Part. ***nomanz** became OE **numen** (see 228).

¹³ **cuman** appeared in Gmc as ***cweman** and as ***cwuman**, the latter form being an "aorist present." In WGmc **w** disappeared if preceded by a consonant and followed by **u** or **o**. Gmc ***cwuman** therefore became OE **cuman**. Pret. Plu. **cōmon** (<***cwōmon**) has **ō** from WGmc **ǣ** (see 226). **cōm** has **ō** by analogy with **cōmon**. The Past Part. **cumen** was from WGmc ***komanz** (see 228). The Past Part. **cymen** developed from a form ***cuminz** (an alternative Gmc and WGmc Past Part. ending ***-inz** existed beside ***-anz**).

CLASS V

402. The Prim Gmc ablaut of Class V was: **e; a; ā; e.** It should be observed that this is the same as that of Class IV except in the past participle.

Strong verbs of Class V have stems ending in a single consonant which is neither a liquid nor a nasal. Representative verbs are:

metan , <i>measure</i>	mæt	māton	meten
ġiefan , <i>give</i>	ġeaf	ġēafon	ġiefen
ġietan , <i>get</i>	ġeat	ġēaton	ġieten
specan , <i>speak</i>	spæc	spācon	specen
sprecan , <i>speak</i>	spræc	sprācon	sprecen
swefan , <i>sleep</i>	swæf	swāfon	swefen
tredan , <i>tread</i>	træd	trādon	treden
wegan , <i>carry</i>	wæg	wāgon	wegen

403. Two verbs with irregular Pret. Sing.:

etan , <i>eat</i>	æt	āton	eten
fretan , <i>devour</i>	fræt	frāton	freten

404. With grammatical change:

cweþan , <i>say</i>	cwæþ	cwādon	cweden
----------------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------

405. Contract verbs:

ġefēon (<*ġefe- han), <i>rejoice</i>	ġefeah	ġefāgon	gefæggen (adj.)
plēon (<*plehan), adventure	pleah		
sēon ¹⁴ (<*sehan), <i>see</i>	seah	sāwon (sāgon)	sewen (seġen)

¹⁴ This verb comes from Gmc *sehwan, *sahw, *sāġwun, *seġwana. In WGmc *sāġwun, sometimes ġ, sometimes w disappeared, giving OFris sēgin; OS sāwun; OE sāgon and sāwon. Similarly the WGmc Past Part. *seġwanz gave OE seġen and sewen.

406. **j**-presents (see Chapter XIX):

biddan , <i>ask</i>	bæd	bædon	beden
licgan , <i>lie</i>	læġ	lægon	leġen
sittan , <i>sit</i>	sæt	sæton	seten

CLASS VI

407. The Prim Gmc ablaut of Class VI was: **a**; **ō**; **ō**; **a**.
Representative verbs are:

dragan , <i>draw</i>	drōg	drōgon	dragen
faran , <i>go</i>	fōr	fōron	faren (færen)
hladan , <i>lade</i>	hlōd	hlōdon	hladen
scacan , <i>shake</i>	scōc	scōcon	scacen
safan , <i>shave</i>	scōf	scōfon	scafen
spanan , <i>seduce</i>	spōn	spōnon	spanen
(spannan)	(spēon) ¹⁵	(spēonon)	(spannen)
standan , ¹⁶ <i>stand</i>	stōd	stōdon	standen
wascan , <i>wash</i>	wōsc	wōscon	wascen
weaxan , <i>grow</i>	wōx	wōxon	weaxen
	(wēox) ¹⁵	(wēoxon)	

408. Contract Verbs:

slēan (<*slahan), <i>strike</i>	slōh (slōg)	slōgon	slagen (slæ- ġen, sleġen) ¹⁷
lēan (<*lahan), <i>blame</i>	lōh (lōg)	lōgon	lagen (læġen, leġen) ¹⁷
flēan (<*flahan), <i>flay</i>	flōh (flōg)	flōgon	flagen

¹⁵ **weaxan** and **spannan** form preterits **wēox**, **spēon** by analogy with verbs of Class VII.

¹⁶ **standan** has a "nasal infix" in the Pres. and Past Part.

¹⁷ **sleġen**, **leġen**, **scepen**, are due to Prehist OE forms like ***slaġinz**, etc. Cf. note 13, **cymen**.

409. *j*-presents:

hebban , <i>heave</i>	hōf	hōfon	hafen (<i>hæfen</i>)
steppan , <i>step</i>	stōp	stōpon	stapen
swerian , <i>swear</i>	swōr	swōron	swaren (<i>sworen</i>) ¹⁸
scieppan , <i>create</i>	scōp	scōpon	scapen (<i>scepen</i>) ¹⁷
hliehhan , <i>laugh</i>	hlōh	hlōgon	
sceþþan , <i>injure</i>	scōd ¹⁹	scōdon	

CLASS VII

410. Verbs of the seventh class are commonly called “reduplicating” because in Gothic their preterits were formed by prefixing to the preterit stem a syllable consisting of the initial consonant plus *e* (in Goth spelled *ai*): Goth **slēpan**—**saíslēp**, *sleep—slept*; **lētan**—**laílōt**, *permit—permitted*. In all other Gmc languages, however, this reduplicating preterit has almost completely disappeared, leaving only a few traces: e.g., in OE, chiefly in poetry, occur occasionally:

hēht, Pret. Sing. of **hātan**, beside usual **hēt**.

reord, Pret. Sing. of **rādan**, beside usual **rādde**, **rēd**.

leolc, Pret. Sing. of **lācan**, beside usual **lēc**.

leort, Pret. Sing. of **lātan**, beside usual **lēt**.

dreord, Pret. Sing. of **drādan** beside usual **drādde**, **drēd**.

In OE, as in the Old Norse, Old Saxon, and Old High German, the usual preterit of these so-called “reduplicating” verbs is an ablaut tense form.

411. Reduplication was an important method of tense formation in the older Indo-European languages. In Greek and Sanscrit the perfect was almost always a reduplicating

¹⁸ **sworen** is due to analogy with **boren**, etc.

¹⁹ **scōd** has **-d** by analogy with Pret. Plu. **scōdon**

tense. In Latin many verbs retain reduplication in their perfect. Thus Latin **dare**, **canere**, and **cadere** have as their perfects **dedi**, **cecini**, and **cecidi**. In Greek, Sanscrit, and prehistoric Latin, however, there was another very important past tense called the aorist, which did not have reduplication and which seems to have been one of the possible ancestors of the OE ablauting preterit. In the case of these so-called reduplicating verbs, the Germanic languages seem originally to have had two preterit tenses, one based on the non-reduplicating aorist, the other on the reduplicating perfect. In Gothic the reduplicating perfect completely supplanted the aorist. In the West and North Germanic languages the non-reduplicating aorist almost completely supplanted the reduplicating perfect. This explanation avoids the utterly impossible theory that OE **cnēow**, *knew*, (for example) developed from such a form as ***cné-cnāw** by the loss of medial **-cn-** and the consequent contraction of the vowels.

412. The infinitive and present of verbs of Class VII have as their stem vowel **ā**, **a** (o) followed by a nasal, **ea**, **ēa**, **ǣ**, **ō**, **ē**, and the preterit has either **ē** or **ēo**. The verbs are divided into two sub-classes on the basis of the preterit vowel.

413. (1) Verbs with **ē** in preterit. Representative verbs are:

hātan , <i>call</i>	hēt	hēton	hāten
blandan , <i>blend</i>	blēnd	blēndon	blanden
drādan , <i>dread</i>	drēd (drādde ²⁰)	drēdon (drāddon)	drāden
lātan , <i>permit</i>	lēt	lēton	lāten
rādan , <i>advise</i>	rēd (rādde ²⁰)	rēdon (rāddon)	rāden
slāpan , <i>sleep</i>	slēp ²¹	slēpon	slāpen

²⁰ **rādan** and **drādan** usually have weak preterits.

²¹ **slāpan** occasionally has a weak preterit, **slāpte**.

414. Contract Verbs:

fōn (< Prim Gmc *fanhanan), <i>seize</i>	fēng	fēngon	fangen
hōn (< Prim Gmc *hanhanan), <i>hang</i>	hēng	hēngon	hangen

415. (2) Verbs with ēo in preterit. Representative verbs are:

bēatan, <i>beat</i>	bēot	bēoton	bēaten
hēawan, <i>hew</i>	hēow	hēowon	hēawen
hlēapan, <i>run</i>	hlēop	hlēopon	hlēapen
blāwan, <i>blow</i>	blēow	blēowon	blāwen
cnāwan, <i>know</i>	cnēow	cnēowon	cnāwen
sāwan, <i>sow</i>	sēow	sēowon	sāwen
gangan, <i>go</i>	ġēong	ġēongon	gangen
fealdan, <i>fold</i>	fēold	fēoldon	fealden
feallan, <i>fall</i>	fēoll	fēollon	feallen
healdan, <i>hold</i>	hēold	hēoldon	healden
wealdan, <i>rule</i>	wēold	wēoldon	wealden
blōwan, <i>bloom</i>	blēow	blēowon	blōwen
flōwan, <i>flow</i>	flēow	flēowon	flōwen
grōwan, <i>grow</i>	grēow	grēowon	grōwen

416. j-presents:

wēpan (< *wōpjan), <i>weep</i>	wēop	wēopon	wōpen
hwēsan (< *hwōs- jan), <i>wheeze</i>	hwēos	hwēoson	hwōsen

STRONG VERBS—PARADIGMS

417. The full conjugation of the strong verbs, exemplified by **bidan**, *await*, **bēodan**, *command*, and **beran**, *bear*, is as follows:

INDICATIVE

Present

Sing. 1	bīde	bēode	bere
2	bīst, bīdest	bīetst, bēodest	birst, berest
3	bīt(t), bīdeþ	bīet(t), bēodeþ	birþ, bereþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	bīdaþ	bēodaþ	beraþ

Preterit

Sing. 1	bād	bēad	bær
2	bīde	bude	bāre
3	bād	bēad	bær
Plu. 1, 2, 3	bīdon	budon	bāror

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing. 1, 2, 3	bīde	bēode	bere
Plu. 1, 2, 3	bīden	bēoden	beren

Preterit

Sing. 1, 2, 3	bīde	bude	bāre
Plu. 1, 2, 3	bīden	buden	bāren

IMPERATIVE

Present

Sing. 2	bīd	bēod	ber
Plu. 1	bīdan	bēodan	beran
2	bīdaþ	bēodaþ	beraþ
Infinitive	bīdan	bēodan	beran
Gerund	tō bīdenne, -anne	tō bēodenne, -anne	tō berenne, -anne
Pres. Part.	bīdende	bēodende	berende
Past Part.	bīden	boden	boren

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF STRONG (AND OF FIRST WEAK) VERBS

Present Indicative

418. 1st Sing. was Gmc **-ō**. This became OE **-u**, which sometimes appears in the earliest MSS. After 800 the usual ending is **-e**, probably from the Subjunc. 1st Sing.

2d Sing. was Gmc **-is**. The **-i-** produced umlaut of the radical vowel, after which the vowel of the ending weakened, and the ending became **-es**. The **-t** of **-es-t** came from the frequent juncture with the postpositive subject **-þū**, giving ***-esþū > *-estū > -est**.

In strong verbs (and long-stemmed first weak verbs) the **-e-** is usually syncopated in EWS, giving the ending **-st** (see 259. 1).

3d Sing. was Gmc **-iþ**. After producing umlaut the ending became **-eþ**. In strong verbs (and long-stemmed first weak verbs) the **-e-** is usually syncopated in EWS, giving **-þ** (see 259. 1).

The Plu. ending was originally the Gmc 3d Plu. **-anþ**, which became OE **-aþ**. This ending was extended by analogy to the 1st and 2nd Plu.

Plu. Indic. forms such as **bīde**, **bēode**, **bere**, etc., occur when the subject is the 1st or 2d personal pronoun **wē**, **ġē**, **wit**, **ġit**, if the pronoun follows the verb: **bīde wē**, **bēode ġē**.

Present Subjunctive

In the Sing. the Prim Gmc endings all became OE **-e**. In the Plu., the regularly developed ending of the 3d person, **-en**, was extended to the 1st and 2d persons.

Preterit Indicative

The 1st and 3d Sing. IE endings were lost in Prim Gmc. The 2d Sing. forms **bīde**, **bude**, **bāre**, etc., may be from the Subjunc.

Gmc 3d Plu. **-un** became OE **-on**. As in the Pres. Indic., the ending of the 3d person was extended by analogy to the 1st and 2d persons plural.

Forms like Pres. Plu. Indic. **bide wē**, etc., occur in the Pret. also, but rarely: **bide wē**, **bude wē**, **bære wē**.

Imperative

The 1st Plu. **-an** is of obscure origin. The form is used as a hortative. It is usually supplanted by the Subjunc. **-en**.

Gerund

The Gerund was originally the Dat. of the Infin., Gmc ***-anjai**, which became OE **-enne**. The ending **-anne** has **-a-** by analogy with the Infin. **-an**.

CONJUGATION OF CONTRACT VERBS

419. The contract verbs, exemplified by **tēon**, *draw*, **sēon** *see*, **slēan**, *strike*, and **fōn**, *seize*, are conjugated in the Pres. Indic., Subjunc., and Imper. as follows:

INDICATIVE

Pres. Sing. 1	tēo	sēo	slēa	fō
2	tīehst	siehst	sliehst	fēhst
3	tīehþ	siehþ	sliehþ	fēhþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	tēoþ	sēoþ	slēaþ	fōþ

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. Sing. 1, 2, 3	tēo	sēo	slēa	fō
Plu. 1, 2, 3	tēon	sēon	slēan	fōn

IMPERATIVE

Pres. Sing. 2	tēoh	seoh	sleah	fōh
Plu. 1	tēon	sēon	slēan	fōn
2	tēoþ	sēoþ	slēaþ	fōþ
Infinitive	tēon	sēon	slēan	fōn
Gerund	tō tēonne	tō sēonne	tō slēanne	tō fōnne

For explanations of these forms, see Chapter XXIV.

420. The forms of the Pres. Indic. 2d and 3d Sing. of other contract verbs are as follows:

Class I: þēon: þiehst, þiehþ; wrēon: wrīehst, wrīehþ.

Class II: flēon: fliehst, fliehþ.

Class III: fēolan: fielhst, fielhþ.

Class V: fēon: fiehst, fiehþ.

Class VI: þwēan: þwiehst, þwiehþ.

Class VII: hōn: hēhst, hēhþ.

SYNCPATION AND ASSIMILATION IN STRONG VERBS

421. In the 1st and 2d Sing. Pres. Indic. of strong verbs the vowel of the endings **-est**, **-eþ**, is often syncopated, and a final **d**, **t**, **þ**, or **g** of the radical syllable is assimilated, the resulting combination often being further simplified. Before syncopation took place, umlaut of the radical vowel, whenever it was capable of umlaut, had already occurred. But as the result of analogy, syncopated forms without umlaut and unsyncopated forms, both with and without umlaut, were developed. In WS the syncopated forms with umlaut are the prevailing ones.

Verb	2d Sing.	3d Sing.
bīdan (I) <i>await</i>	bītst, bīdest	bīt(t), bīdeþ
stīgan (I) <i>go</i>	stīhst, stīgest	stīhþ, stīgeþ
bēodan (II) <i>command</i>	bīetst, bēodest	biet(t), bēodeþ
ċēosan (II) <i>choose</i>	ċiest, ċēosest	ċiest, ċēoseþ

bindan (III) <i>bind</i>	hintst, bindest	bint, bindeþ
helpan (III) <i>help</i>	hilpst, helpest	hilpþ, helpeþ
weorþan (III) <i>become</i>	wierst, weorþest	wierþ, weorþeþ
weorpan (III) <i>cast</i>	wierpst, weorpest	wierpþ, weorpeþ
beran (IV) <i>bear</i>	birst, berest	birþ, bereþ
cuman (IV) <i>come</i>	cymst, cumest	cymþ, cumeþ
etan (V) <i>eat</i>	itst, etest	it(t), eteþ
cweþan (V) <i>say</i>	cwist, cweþest	cwiþ, cweþeþ
biddan (V) <i>ask</i>	bitst, bidest	bit(t), bideþ
faran (VI) <i>go</i>	færst, færest	færþ, færeþ
standan (VI) <i>stand</i>	stentst, standest	stent, standeþ
hātan (VII) <i>command</i>	hāetst, hātest	hāt(t), hāteþ
healdan (VII) <i>hold</i>	hieltst, healdest	hielt, healdeþ
feallan (VII) <i>fall</i>	fielst, feallest	fielþ, fealleþ
tēon (I) <i>blame</i>	tiehst	tiehþ
tēon (II) <i>draw</i>	tiehst	tiehþ
sēon (V) <i>see</i>	siehst	siehþ
slēan (VI) <i>strike</i>	slihst	slihþ
fōn (VII) <i>seize</i>	fēhst	fēhþ

422. In the Syncopated forms:

1. A double consonant at the end of the radical syllable is simplified: **feallan, fielst, fielþ**.

2. **d** before **st** becomes **t**: **bidan, bitst**.

3. **d** before **þ** becomes **t**, **þ** becomes **t**, and **tt** is simplified: **bidan, bit**.

4. **t** before **þ** assimilates **þ** to **t**, and **tt** is simplified: **etan, it**.

5. **g** before **st** or **þ** becomes **h**: **stigan, stihst, stihþ**.

6. **þ** before **st** usually disappears, but may become **t**, or may be restored: **cweþan, cwist; sniþan, snitst, sniþst**.

7. **þ** before **þ** is simplified: **cweþan, cwiþ**.

8. **s** before **st** is simplified: **cēosan, cīest** (2d).

9. **s** before **þ** gives **st**: **cēosan, cīest** (3d).

WEAK VERBS

423. Three classes of weak verbs are to be distinguished in OE.

1. Weak verbs of the first class had a prehistoric suffix containing **-j-** or **-i-**. Cf. Chapter XVIII.

2. Weak verbs of the second class had a prehistoric suffix containing **-ōj-** or **-ō-**.

3. Weak verbs of the third class had a prehistoric suffix containing **-ai-**.

FIRST WEAK VERBS

424. Typical first weak verbs are conjugated as follows: **fremman**, *make*; **dēman**, *judge*; **nerian**, *save*.

INDICATIVE

Present			
Sing. 1	fremme	dēme	nerie
2	fremest	dēmst, dēmest	nerest
3	fremeþ	dēmþ, dēmeþ	nereþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	fremmaþ	dēmaþ	neriaþ
Preterit			
Sing. 1, 3	fremede	dēmde	nerede
2	fremedest	dēmdest	neredest
Plu. 1, 2, 3	fremedon	dēmdon	neredon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present			
Sing.	fremmen	dēme	nerie
Plu.	fremmen	dēmen	nerien
Preterit			
Sing.	fremede	dēmde	nerede
Plu.	fremeden	dēmden	nereden

IMPERATIVE

	Present		
Sing. 2	freme	dēm	nere
Plu. 1	fremman	dēman	nerian
2	fremmaþ	dēmaþ	neriaþ
Infin.	fremman	dēman	nerian
Gerund	tō fremmenne, -anne	tō dēmenne, -anne	tō nerienne, -anne
Pres. Part.	fremmende	dēmende	neriende
Past Part.	fremed	dēmed	nered

425. First weak verbs had in Prim Gmc a prehistoric suffix which occurred sometimes in the form **j**, sometimes in the form **i**. In the Gmc forms from which the OE forms were derived **j** occurred in the Pres. Indic. 1st Sing., the Pres. Indic. Plu., the Pres. Subjunc. Sing. and Plu., the Imper. Plu., the Infin., Ger., and Pres. Part.; **i** occurred in the Pres. Indic. 2d and 3d Sing., the Pret. Indic. and Subjunc., the Imper. Sing., and the Past Part. Both **j** and **i** umlauted the vowel of the radical syllable. Wherever **j** occurred the final consonant (except **r**) of an originally short radical syllable was geminated. **i**, however, tho causing umlaut, did not cause gemination. For a detailed presentation, see Chapters XVII, XVIII.

✓ 426. A distinction is to be made between verbs with an originally short radical syllable like **fremman**, **nerian** (< Gmc ***fram-jan**, ***naz-jan**), and those with an originally long radical syllable, like **dēman** (< Gmc ***dōm-jan**).

1. Verbs with originally short stems form their preterit indicative first person singular by means of the ending **-ede**, and their past participle by means of the ending **-ed**. The principal parts of representative verbs are as follows:

fremman , <i>make</i>	fremede	fremed
nerian , <i>save</i>	nerede	nered

2. Verbs with originally long stems form the preterit indicative first person singular by means of the ending **-de** or **-te**; that is, the middle vowel **-e-** is syncopated. They form the past participle by means of the ending **-ed**. When the stem of the verb ends in a voiced consonant, the ending is **-de**; but when the stem ends in a voiceless consonant, the ending is **-te**. Representative verbs are:

dēman , <i>judge</i>	dēmdē	dēmed
cēmban , <i>comb</i>	cēmbde	cēmbēd
ærnān , <i>gallop</i>	ærnde	ærned
cēpan , <i>keep</i>	cēpte	cēped
scierpan , <i>sharpen</i>	scierpte	scierped
ādhwāscan , <i>quench</i>	ādhwāscde	ādhwāscēd
fyllan , <i>fill</i>	fylde	fylled

Verbs whose stems end in **d** or **t** always syncopate the middle vowel of the preterit ending, no matter whether the stem was originally long or originally short, so that the ending becomes **-de** or **-te**. The vowel of the ending of the past participle may also be syncopated, so that it becomes **-dd** or **-tt** instead of **-ed**. Representative verbs are:

hreddan , <i>save</i>	hredde	hreded, hred(d)
settan , <i>set</i>	sette	seted, set(t)
lādan , <i>lead</i>	lādde	lāded, lād(d)
mētan , <i>meet</i>	mētte	mēted, mēt(t)

Verbs whose stems end in **d** or **t** preceded by another consonant have only a single **d** or **t** in the preterit and in the syncopated form of the past participle. Examples are:

wendan , <i>turn</i>	wende	wended, wend
fæstan , <i>make fast</i>	fæste	fæsted, fæst

427. The preterits and past participles of verbs of several types require special attention. The principal parts are:

nemnan , <i>name</i>	nemde	nemned , nemd ✓
hyngran , <i>hunger</i>	hyngrede	hynghred
biēcnan , <i>make a sign</i>	biēcnode	biēcned
dieġlan , <i>conceal</i>	dieġlede	dieġled
ġierwan , <i>prepare</i>	ġierede	ġier(w)ed
lecgan , <i>lay</i>	leġde	leġd ✓

nemde, **nemd** show syncope after the long radical syllable **nemn-**; **n** disappeared between **m** and **d** thru "phonetic economy."

hyngrede, **hynghred** (and **biēcnode**, **dieġlede**, etc.) retain the middle vowel because the long radical syllable plus **r**, **n**, or **l** phonetically required a vowel between **r**, **n**, or **l** and **d**.

ġierede, **ġiered**, show the regular disappearance of **w** before **e** (<**i**); **w** was sometimes restored by analogy with the forms where it was retained.

leġde, **leġd**, though the radical syllable is short, show syncope.

SYNCOPE AND ASSIMILATION IN FIRST WEAK VERBS

428. Syncope, and the frequent assimilation and simplification of resultant consonant combinations, occurred under certain circumstances in the 2d and 3d Sing. Pres. Indic., and in the Pret. and Past Part. of many first weak verbs.

429. I. In the 2d and 3d Sing. Pres. Indic., syncope occurred in EWS in verbs with originally long radical syllables, providing the consonant combination which would result was capable of being pronounced. Thus **dēmst**, **dēmþ**, **cēpst**, **cēpþ**, **mētst**. After syncope, the final consonant of the radical syllable was often assimilated to that of the ending, or the consonant of the ending to that of the radical syllable. (See 418, 422, 259, 260.)

1. A double consonant at the end of the radical syllable is simplified: **fyllan**, **fylost**, **fylþ**.

2. **d** before **st** becomes **t**: **lādan**, **lāetst** (2d).
3. **d** before **þ** gives **tt**, and **tt** is simplified: **lādan**, **lāet** (3d).
4. **þ** after **t** is assimilated to **t**, and **tt** is simplified: **mētan**, **mēt** (3d).
5. **s(s)** before **st** is simplified: **cyssan**, **cyst** (2d).
6. **s** before **þ** gives **st**: **cyssan**, **cyst** (3d).
7. **st** before **st** gives **st**: **fæstan**, **fæst** (2d).

But in all verbs with long radical syllables we find frequently the endings **-est**, **-eþ**, levelled by analogy from verbs with originally short radical syllables.

Verbs like **hyngnan**, *hunger*, **timbran**, *build*, **efnan**, *level*, **seġlan**, *sail*, which have a radical syllable ending in a voiced consonant plus a liquid or nasal, do not exhibit syncopation.

430. II. In the preterit, syncopation of the vowel **-e-** (<**i**) of the ending occurs in most verbs with originally long radical syllables: **dēman**, **dēmd**, **cemban**, **cembde**, **lādan**, **lādde**.

Syncopation occurs even in verbs with originally short radical syllables if the radical syllable ends in **d** or **t**: **hreddan**, **hredde**; **settan**, **sette**.

If the radical syllable ended in two consonants, the latter of which was **d** or **t**, the resulting combination was simplified: **wendan**, **wende**; **fæstan**, **fæste**.

431. III. In the past participle, syncopation, assimilation, and simplification occurred if the radical syllable ended in **d** or **t**: **hreddan**, **hred**; **settan**, **set**; **lādan**, **lād**; **mētan**, **mēt**; **wendan**, **wend**; **fæstan**, **fæst**; also in **nemnan**, **nemd**. Unsyncopated forms with **-ed**, however, occur rather frequently in the past participle of these verbs.

FIRST WEAK VERBS "WITHOUT MIDDLE VOWEL"

432. Certain weak verbs of Class I exhibit no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. In Prim Gmc these verbs

had **-j-** or **-i-** in the present, but had no **-i-** in the Pret. and Past Part. See 146.

Representative verbs are:

tellan, <i>count</i>	tealde	teald
✓ sellan, <i>give</i>	sealde	seald
cwellan, <i>kill</i>	cwealde	cweald
stellan, <i>place</i>	stealde	steald
bycgan, <i>buy</i>	bohte	boht
cweccan, <i>shake</i>	cweahte, cwehte	cweaht, cweht
reccan, <i>narrate</i>	reahte	reaht, reht
streccan, <i>stretch</i>	streahte, strehte	streaht, streht
ræccan, <i>reach</i>	rāhte, ræhte	rāht, ræht
tæccan, <i>teach</i>	tāhte, tæhte	tāht, tæht
sēcān, <i>seek</i>	sōhte	sōht
wyrccan, <i>work</i>	worhte	worht
þencan, <i>think</i>	þōhte	þōht
þyncan, <i>seem</i>	þūhte	þūht
bregan, <i>bring</i>	brōhte	brōht
bringan, <i>bring</i>		

433. Conjugation of **tellan**, *count*, **sēcān**, *seek*, **bycgan**, *buy*, **þencan**, *think*, in present indicative:

Sing. 1	telle	sēce	bycge	þenče
2	telest	sēcst, sēcest	byġest	þencst, þencēst
3	teleþ	sēcþ, sēcēþ	byġeþ	þencþ, þencēþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	tellaþ	sēcāþ	bycgāþ	þencāþ

SECOND WEAK VERBS

434. Second weak verbs in Gmc had a stem ending in **-ō-**, as appears from Goth **salbōn**, OHG **salbōn**, *anoint*. In OFris, OS, and OE, however, the ending **-jan** (**-jō**, **-janþ**, etc.) is added to the stem ***salbō-**, giving Prehist OE ***salbōjan**; this, by umlaut of the **ō**, became ***sealfējan** > ***sealfejan** > ***sealfjan** > **sealfian**.

435. The conjugation of **bodian**, *proclaim*, together with the Prehist OE forms, follows:

INDICATIVE

Present

	Prehist OE	OE
Sing. 1	* bodōju	bodie
2	* bodōs	bodas(t)
3	* bodōþ	bodaþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	* bodōjanþ	bodiaþ

Preterit

Sing. 1	* bodōde	bodode
2	* bodōdes	bododest
3	* bodōde	bodode
Plu. 1, 2, 3	* bodōdun	bododon, bodedon ²²

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing. 1, 2, 3	* bodōje	bodie
Plu. 1, 2, 3	* bodōjen	bodien

Preterit

Sing. 1, 2, 3	* bodōde	bodode
Plu. 1, 2, 3	* bodōden	bododen

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2	* bodō	boda
Plu. 1	* bodōjan	bodian
2	* bodōjanþ	bodiaþ
Infin.	* bodōjan	bodian
Gerund	tō *bodōjannje	tō bodienne
Pres. Part.	* bodōjandi	bodiende
Past Part.	* bodōd	bodod

²² The middle vowel -o- often became e when the vowel of the next syllable was a, o, or u; it remained o, however, when the vowel of the next syllable was e. This explains the variation that we find between **bodode** and **bodedon**, and between **heofones**, Gen. Sing., and **heofenas**, Nom. Plur.

THIRD WEAK VERBS

436. Third weak verbs in Gmc had a stem ending in **-ai-**, as appears in Goth 2d and 3d Sing. Pres. Indic. **habais; habaiþ**, *have*; Pret. **habaida**, *had*; OHG **habēn** (< ***habain**). In OFris, OS, and OE the verbs originally belonging to the third class have been so widely and thoroughly influenced by analogy with the first and second classes that practically no traces of the Gmc conjugation remain.

(1) Some verbs, like **fæstan**, *make firm*, (cf. OHG **fastēn**), have completely "gone over" to the first weak verbs.

(2) Some verbs, like **tilian**, *strive* (cf. OHG **zilēn**), have completely "gone over" to the second weak verbs.

(3) Some verbs, like **fylġean**, **folgian**, *follow*, exhibit, in one set of forms, umlaut and the endings of the first weak verbs, as in **fylġean**, and, in another complete set of forms, no umlaut and the endings of the second weak verbs, as in **folgian**.

(4) A few verbs, **habban**, *have*; **libban**, *live*; **secgan**, *say*; **hycgan**, *think*; and contract verbs like **þrēaġan**, *rebuke*; **frēoġan**, *free*, are usually so conjugated in WS as to deserve to be regarded as still a separate conjugation.

437. The principal parts of **þrēaġan**, *rebuke*, and **frēoġan**, *free*, are:

þrēaġan	þrēade	þrēad
frēoġan	frēode	frēod

The present indicative forms are: **þrēaġe**, **þrēast**, **þrēaþ**,
Plu. **þrēaġaþ**; **frēoġe**, **frēost**, **frēoþ**, Plu. **frēoġaþ**.

438. Conjugation of **habban**, *have*, **libban**, *live*, **secgan**, *say*:

INDICATIVE

Present

Sing. 1	hæbbe	libbe , lifġe	secge
2	hæfst , hafast	liofast	sæġst , sagast
3	hæfþ , hafað	liofaþ	sæġþ , sagaþ
Plu. 1, 2, 3	habbaþ , hæbbaþ	libbaþ , lifġaþ	secgaþ

Preterit

Sing. 1, 3	hæfde	lifde	sægðe
2	hæfdest	lifdest	sægðest
Plu. 1, 2, 3	hæfdon	lifdon	sægðon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing.	hæbbe	libbe, lifge	secge
Plu.	hæbben	libben, lifgen	secgen

Preterit

Sing.	hæfde	lifde	sægðe
Plu.	hæfden	lifden	sægðen

IMPERATIVE

Present

Sing. 2	hafa	liofo	saga, sæge
Plu. 2	habbaþ	libbaþ, lifgaþ	secgaþ

INFINITIVE

habban	libban, lifgan	secgan
---------------	-----------------------	---------------

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

hæbbende	libbende, lifgende	secgende
-----------------	---------------------------	-----------------

PAST PARTICIPLE

hæfd	lifd	sægð
-------------	-------------	-------------

Forms with gemination (**hæbbe**, **libbe**, **secge**, etc.) show that they derive from Gmc **-j-** forms, ***habjai**, ***libjai**, ***sax.ija**.

Forms with **-a-** in the ending (**hafap**, **hafa**, etc.) show that they derive from prehistoric **-ō-** forms.

Forms like **hæfde**, **hæfd**, etc., are like such first weak forms as **tealde**, **teald**, which lack a middle vowel in the preterit and past participle.

PRETERITIVE-PRESENT VERBS

439. The Preteritive-Present Verbs were originally strong verbs. The original strong preterits, however, have the meaning of the present tense in OE and other Gmc languages, while a new weak preterit has been formed to signify past time. For details see 175-177.

440. Since these verbs not only originally belonged to various classes of strong verbs, but still show the class to which they belong, they may be grouped as follows:

Original Series	Verb	Pres. 3 Sing. (Old Str. Pret.)	Pres. Plu. (Old Str. Pret.)	Pret. 3 Sing. (New Weak Pret.)
I.	āgan , <i>possess</i>	āh	āgon	āhte
I.	witan , <i>know</i>	wāt	witon	wisse , wiste
II.	dugan , <i>avail</i>	dēag	dugon	dohte
III.	unnan , <i>grant</i>	ann , onn	unnon	ūþe
- III.	cunnan , <i>know</i> , <i>be able</i>	cann , conn	cunnon	cūþe
- III.	þurfan , <i>need</i>	þearf	þurfon	þorfte
III.	durran , <i>dare</i>	dearr	durron	dorste
IV.	sculan , <i>be obliged</i>	sceal	sculon	sceolde
IV.	munan , <i>remember</i>	man , mon	munon	munde
V.	magan , <i>be able</i>	mæg	magon	meahte , mihte
V.	(ġe)nugan , <i>suf- fice</i>	neah	nugon	nohte
- VI.	mōtan , <i>be per- mitted</i>	mōt	mōton	mōste

441. Conjugation of **witan, cunnan, sculan, magan**:

INDICATIVE

Present

Sing. 1	wāt	cann, conn	sceal	mæg
2	wāst	canst, const	scealt	meaht
3	wāt	cann, conn	sceal	mæg
Plu.	witon	cunnon	sculon	magan

Preterit

Sing. 1	wisse, wiste	cūþe	sceolde	meahte, mihte
2		cūþest	sceoldest	meahtest, mihtest
3	wisse, wiste	cūþe	sceolde	meahte, mihte
Plu.	wisson, wiston	cūþon	sceoldon	meahton, mihton

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing.	wite	cunne	scyle, scule	mæge, muge
Plu.	witen	cunnen	scylen, sculen	mægen, mugen

Preterit

Sing.	wisse, wiste	cūþe	sceolde	meahte, mihte
Plu.	wissen, wisten	cūþen	sceolden	meahten, mihten

IMPERATIVE

Sing.	wite			
Plu.	witaþ			
Infin.	witan	cunnan	sculan	magan
Gerund	tō witenne,	tō cunnenne,		
	-anne	-anne		
Pres. Part.	witende			
Past Part.	witen	cunnen, cūþ		

ANOMALOUS VERBS

442. The four “anomalous” verbs are thus termed because no one of them can be classified with any of the other groups of verbs. They are **bēon** (**wesan**), *be*; **dōn**, *do*; **gān**, *go*; **willan**, *will*.

bēon, is, wesan

443. **bēon, is, wesan**, were originally three independent verbs, with the IE roots **bheu*, **es/os*, **wes/wos*, various forms of which became joined in Gmc to make a complete “composite” conjugation.

INDICATIVE

	Singular	Plural
1	eom; bēo	1, 2, 3 sindon, sind, sint; bēoþ; wesað
2	eart; bist	
3	is; biþ	
	Preterit	
1	wæs	1, 2, 3 wæron
2	wære	
3	wæs	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

1, 2, 3 **sīe; bēo****sīen; bēon**

Preterit

1, 2, 3 **wāre****wāren**

IMPERATIVE

2 **bēo; wes****bēoþ; wesað**Infīn. **bēon, wesan**Pres. Part. **bēonde, wesende**Gerund **tō bēonne**

eom, eart, is, belong to the IE base ***es/os**, which appears in Lat forms such as **es-se, es, est**.

s-ind(on), etc., belong to the IE base ***es/os**, which appears in Lat forms such as **s-unt**.

bēo, etc., belong to the IE base ***bheu**, which appears in Lat forms such as **fui**.

In the present indicative, **eom, eart, is, sindon** are used to signify *present* time. **bēo, bist, biþ, bēoþ** are used usually to signify *future* time.

dōn444. **dōn, do:**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Pres.	Pret.		Pres.	Pret.
Sing. 1	dō	dyde, dāde	1, 2, 3	dō	dyde
2	dēst	dydest			
3	dēþ	dyde, dāde			
Plu.	dōþ	dydon, dādon	1, 2, 3	dōn	dyden

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2	dō	Plu. 2	dōþ
Infīn.	dōn	Pres. Part.	dōnde
Gerund	tō dōnne	Past Part.	dōn

gān445. **gān**, *go*.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Pres.	Pret.	Pres.	Pret.
Sing.	1 gā 2 gāest 3 gāþ	ēode ēodeſt ēode	1, 2, 3 gā	ēode
Plu.	gāþ	ēodon	gān	ēoden

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2	gā	Plu. 2	gāþ
Infīn.	gān	Past Part.	gān
Gerund	tō gānne		

willan446. **willan**, *wish, will*.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Pres.	Pret.		Pres.	Pret.
Sing.	1 wille	wolde	1, 2, 3	wille	wolde
	2 wilt	woldest			
	3 wile, wille	wolde			
Plu.	willað	woldon		willen	wolden
Infīn.	willan		Pres. Part.	willende	
Gerund	tō willenne, -anne				

GLOSSARY

The order of words is alphabetical; æ and ǣ are placed between **ad** and **af**, þ and ǿ between **t** and **u**. Words containing **a** which interchanges with **o** (before nasals) are given with the **a** form. Strong verbs are distinguished by an arabic numeral denoting the class to which they belong. Weak verbs are distinguished by **W.**, followed by a Roman numeral indicative of their class. Preteritive-present verbs are marked **PP**, anomalous verbs **A**. The abbreviations **m.**, **f.**, and **n.** stand for masculine, feminine, and neuter.

A

- ā, adv., *ever, always*
 ābēodan, ābēad, ābudon, āboden, 2,
 announce, offer, command
 ac, conj., *but*
 ācwenčan, W.I, *quench*
 ādl, f., *disease*
 æcer, m., *field, acre*
 æfestfull, adj., *envious*
 æfestig, adj., *envious*
 æfestian, W.II, *be envious*
 æfter, prep., *after*
 ægþer, adj., *either, each*
 æht, f., *property*
 ælc, adj., *each*
 ænig, adj., *any*
 ær, adv., conj., *formerly, before*
 ærwacol, adj., *early awake*
 ærest, adv., *first*
 æt, prep., *at, from; æt niehstan, in the*
 next place, thereupon
 æt, æton, see *etan*
 ætēowian, W.II, *show, appear*
 ætiewan, W.I, *show, appear*
 ætbregdan, ætbrægd, ætbrugdon, æt-
 brogden, 3, *take away æðelboren,*
 adj., *nobly born, of nobel birth*
 æðele, adj., *noble*
 æðelborenness, f., *nobility of birth*
 æðeling, m., *nobleman, king's son*
 æfeorsian, W.II, *remove*
 āgan, āh, āgon, āhte, PP., *own*
 āgēan, prep., *against, towards*
 āgēotan, āgēat, āguton, āgoten, 2,
 pour āgiefan, 5, give up, pay
 āgieldan, āgeald, āguldon, āgolden, 3,
 pay, yield
 —āhebban, āhōf, āhōfon, āhafen, 6,
 raise, lift up
 āhte, see *āgan*
 ālādan, W.I, *lead, bring*
 āliefan, W.I, *allow, grant*
 āmierran, W.I, *destroy*
 ān, num. and indef. art., *one; a an;*
 āna (weak form), alone
 and, conj., *and*
 andswarian, W.II, *answer*
 andswaru, f., *answer*
 andweard, adj., *opposite, present*
 andwlita, m., *face*
 andwyrðan, W.I, *answer*
 anlic, adj., *like*
 ānrædness, f., *constancy*
 āræfnan, W.I, *endure*
 ārāran, W.I., *raise*

ārās, see *ārisan*
 āreahte, see *āreccan*
 āreccan, āreahte, āreaht, W.I, *tell*
 āredian, W.II, *prepare, find*
 ārēodian, W.II, *redden, blush*
 ārfæst, adj., *merciful, kind, gracious*
 ārisan, ārās, ārison, ārisen, 1, *arise*
 ārison, see *ārisan*
 arn, see *irnan*
 āscian, W.II, *ask*
 āsendan, W.I, *send*
 āstreahte, see *āstreccan*
 āstreccan, āstreahte, āstreaht, W.I,
stretch; prostrate oneself
 āstyrian, W.I, *stir, move, agitate*
 āðum, m., *son-in-law*
 āweahte, see *āweccan*
 āweccan, āweahte, āweaht, W.I,
awake
 āwritan, āwrāt, āwriton, āwriten, 1,
write
 āwurtwalian, W.II, *root up*
 āxian, W.II, *ask*

B

bæd, see *biddan*
 bærnan, W.I, *burn*
 bāron, see *beran*
 bām, dat. plur., *both*
 bāt, m., *boat*
 bāt, see *bitan*
 be, prep., *concerning, by, according to*
 beald, adj., *bold*
 bealg, see *belgan*
 bēancodd, m., *bean-pod*
 bebēodan, bebēad, bebudon, beboden, 2, *offer, entrust, command, announce*
 bebod, n., *command*
 beboden, see *bebēodan*

bebyrgan, W.I, *bury*
 beclyppan, W.I, *embrace*
 becoming, becōm, becōmon, becumen, 4, *become, come, happen, fall among*
 bedd, n., *bed*
 befæstan, W.I, *establish, entrust, apply*
 beforan, adv. and prep., *before*
 begieman, W. I., *take care of, attend to*
 behātan, behēt, behēton, behāten, 7, *promise; threaten*
 behealdan, behēold, behēoldon, behealden, 7, *look at*
 belgan, bealg, bulgon, bolgen, 3, *swell, become angry*
 belocen, see *belūcan*
 belūcan, belēac, belucon, belocen, 2, *lock*
 benē, f., *bench*
 bēod, m., *table*
 bēon, wæs, wāron, A, *be*
 bēorscipe, m., *jeast*
 beran, bær, bāron, boren, 4, *bear*
 berēafian, W.II, *rob*
 bern, n., *barn*
 besēon, beseah, besāwon, besewen, 5, *see, look at, look up*
 besorgian, W.II, *be sorry for*
 beswican, beswāc, beswicon, beswicen, 1, *deceive, overcome*
 betst, adv., *best*
 betwēonum, prep., *between*
 betweox, prep., *between*
 betȳnan, W.I, *enclose*
 beþencan, beþōhte, beþōht, W.I, *consider, bethink*
 beþōhte, see *beþencan*
 bewendan, W.I, *turn*
 biddan, bæd, bādon, beden, 5, *pray, ask, entreat*
 bindan, band, bundon, bunden, 3, *bind*

binnan, prep., *within*
 bisiġ, adj., *busy*
 bispell, n., *parable, example*
 bitan, bāt, biton, biten, 1, *bite, cul*
 bliss, f., *joy, bliss*
 blissian, W.II, *rejoice*
 bliþe, adj., *joyful, merry*
 böccræft, m., *book-learning*
 boda, m., *messenger*
 bringan, bröhte, bröht, W.I, *bring*
 brōþor, m., *brother*
 brȳd, f., *bride*
 brȳdguma, m., *bridegroom*
 būr, n., *chamber*
 burhsittende, adj., *city-dwelling*
 būton, prep., *without, except, outside of*
 bycgan, bohte, boht, W.I, *buy*
 byrne, f., *coat of mail*

C

camp, m., *battle*
 caru, f., *care, trouble*
 ċealf, n., *calf*
 ċeaster, f., *city*
 ċeasterġewaran, plur., *citizens*
 ċēosan, ċēas, curon, coren, 2, *choose*
 ċiepan, W.I, *sell, buy*
 ċiepend, m., *merchant*
 ċild, n., *child*
 clipian, W.II, *call*
 cniht, m., *young man, boy*
 coccel, m., *tares, cockle*
 cōm, cōmon, see *cuman*
 cræft, m., *skill, power, strength, accomplishment*
 cruma, m., *crumb*
 cuma, m., *stranger, guest*
 cuman, cōm, cōmon, cumen, 4, *come*
 cunnan, cann, cunnon, cūðe, PP.,
be able, know how, know
 cwædon, cwæþ, see *cweðan*

cweartern, n., *prison*
 cwēn, f., *woman, queen*
 cweðan, cwæþ, cwædon, cweden, 5,
say, speak
 cwide, m., *saying, statement*
 cwielman, W.I, *kill, torment*
 cynhelm, m., *crown*
 cyneliċ, adj., *royal*
 cyning, m., *king*
 cyssan, W.I, *kiss*
 cȳþan, W.I, *make known*

D

dæd, f., *deed*
 dædbōt, f., *penance, reparation*
 dæg, m., *day*
 dæġhwāmliċe, adv., *daily*
 dæl, m., *share, part*
 dælan, W.I, *divide, give out*
 dēad, adj., *dead*
 dēað, m., *death*
 delfan, dealf, dulfon, dolfen, 3, *dig*
 Dene, m. pl., *Danes*
 dēorweorþ, adj., *valuable, precious*
 dēorwierþe, adj., *valuable, precious*
 diacon, m., *deacon*
 dohtor, f., *daughter*
 dōn, dyde, dōn, do, make *do*
 drēam, m., *joy, noise of rejoicing*
 dryht, f., *band of retainers*
 dryhten, m., *lord*
 duru, f., *door*
 dwolma, m., *empty space, chaos*
 dyde, see *dōn*
 dyppan, W.I, *dip*
 dysiġ, adj., *foolish*

E

ēac, adv., *also*
 ēage, n., *eye*
 ēalā, oh!

eald, adj., *old*
ealdormann, m., *chief, nobleman, magistrate* (the ealdormann of each shire was its chief judicial officer and the leader of its military forces; the scīrġerēfa or sheriff was merely his deputy)
eall, adj., *all*
eall swā, adv., *even so, just as*
earm, m., *arm*
earm, adj., *poor*
ēaðe, adv., *easily*
ecg, f., *edge, sword*
efenþeow, m., *fellow-servant*
efenþeowa, m., *fellow-servant*
efne, *behold!*
eft, adv., *again, back*
elcung, f., *delay*
ele, m., *oil*
elþeodigness, f., *life in a foreign country*
ende, m., *end*
engel, m., *angel*
ēode, ēodon, see gān
eom, first person pres. ind. of hēon
eorl, m., *chief, nobleman, magistrate* (much the same as ealdormann)
eorðtilia, m., *farmer, husbandman*
etan, æt, æton, eten, 5, *eat*

F

fæder, m., *father*
fæġer, adj., *beautiful*
fæmne, f., *maiden*
færinga, adv., *suddenly*
fæt, n., *vessel*
fætt, adj., *fat*
faran, fōr, fōron, faren, 6, *go*
feallan, fēoll, fēollon, feallen, 7, *fall*
fēawe, plur. adj., *few*

feccan, fette, fett, W.I, *fetch, bring*
fela, indecl. n., *much, many*
fēng, fēngon, see fōn
feohtan, feaht, fuhton, fohten, 3, *fight*
fēond, m., *enemy*
feorlen, adj., *distant, remote*
feorr, adj., *far*
feorr, prep., *far from*
feorran, adv., *from afar*
fēower, num., *four*
fēran, W.I, *go*
fēða, m., *troop*
fif, num., *five*
findan, fand (funde), fundon, funden, 3, *find*
finger, m., *finger*
fisc, m., *fish*
fiscere, m., *fisherman*
flota, m., *sailor*
folc, n., *people, tribe, folk*
folgian, W.II, *follow, serve*
fōn, fēng, fēngon, fangen, 7, *seize, take, catch*
for, prep., *for*
for þām, for þām, *therefore, because*
for þām þe, for þām þe, *because*
forbærnan, W.I, *burn up*
forbūgan, forbēag, forbugon, forbogen, 2, *turn away from, avoid*
fordōn, A., *destroy*
forġiefan, forġeaf, forġēafon, forġiefen, 5, *give, forgive*
forġieldān, forġeald, forguldon, forgolden, 3, *repay*
forġieman, W.I, *neglect, despise*
forlætan, forlēt, forlēton, forlæten, 7, *leave, abandon, lose, release*

forlēosan, forlēas, forluron, forloren,
2, lose, destroy

forlēt, forlēton, see forlāetan

forliden, adj., shipwrecked

forlidenness, f., shipwreck

forniman, fornam, fornōmon, for-
numen, 4, seize, destroy

forspillan, W.I, waste, destroy

forþ, adv., forth, out, on

forþfēran, W.I, die

forþrysmian, W.II, strangle, choke

forþtēah, see forþtēon

forþtēon, forþtēah, forþtugon, forþ-
togen, 2, bring forth, produce,
exhibit

forwandian, W.II, hesitate, reverence

forwearð, see forweorðan

forweorðan, forwearþ, forwurdon,
forworden, 3, perish

forwiernan, W.I, restrain, refuse

forwundian, W. II, wound

fōt, m., foot

fram, prep., from, by

frēond, m., friend

frōfor, m., consolation, help, joy

fugol, m., bird

fuhton, see feohtan

fȳr, n., fire

G

gaderian, W.II, gather

gælsa, m., wantonness, pride

gān, ēode, gān, A., go, walk

gār, m., spear

gēæmettigian, W.II, be at leisure

gēaf, see giefan

gēar, n., year

gēaru, adj., ready

gēat, n., gate

gēbēorscipe, m., feast

gēberan, gēbær, gēbæron, gēboren,
4, bear

gēbidan, gēbād, gēbidon, gēbiden, 1,
wait, get by waiting, experience

gēblissian, W.II, rejoice

gēbrōþru, m. plur., brothers

gēbyrd, f., birth

gēbyrian, W.I, happen, be fitting, per-
tain

gēcēlan, W.I, cool

gēcēosan, gēcēas, gēcuron, gēcoren,
2, choose

gēcīegān, W.I, call

gēcneordness, f., accomplishment

gēcweðan, gēcwaþ, gēcwædon, gēcwe-
den, 5, say, speak

gēcwēman, W.I, please

gēcȳþan, W.I, make known

gēdafenian, W.II, be fitting

gēdafenhc, adj., suitable, appropriate

gēdōn, gēdyde, gēdōn, A., do, ac-
complish, cause, make

gēedcwician, W.II, revive

gēedniwian, W.II, renew, restore

gēendian, W.II, end

gēendung, f., end

gēfaran, gēfōr, gēfōron, gēfaren, 6,
go, get by going, experience

gēfeallan, gēfēoll, gēfēollon, gē-
feallen, 7, fall, happen

gēfōn, gēfēng, gēfēngon, gēfangen, 7,
take, seize, catch

gēfrēfran, W.I, console, comfort

gēfyllan, W.I, fill

gēfyrn, adv., formerly

gēgaderian, W.II, gather

gēgōdian, W.II, enrich, endow

gēgierela, m., garment

gēhabban, W.II, have

gēhieran, W.I, hear

ġehiersum, adj., *obedient*
 ġehiersumian, W.II, *obey*
 ġehyhtan, W.I, *hope, trust*
 ġeinnian, W.II, *supply*
 ġeinseġlian, W.II, *seal*
 ġelædan, W.I, *lead, bring*
 ġelæran, W.I, *teach, educate*
 ġelaðian, W.II, *invite*
 ġeleornian, W.II, *learn*
 ġeliċ, adj., *like*
 ġeliċe, adv., *similarly*
 ġeliefan, W.I, *believe*
 ġelimp, n., *happening, event, fortune*
 ġelimpan, ġelamp, ġelumpon,
 ġelumpen, 3, *happen*
 ġelufian, W.II, *love*
 ġemæcċa, m., *mate, husband*
 ġemengan, W.I, *mix, combine*
 ġemētan, W.I, *meet, find*
 ġemiltsian, W.II, *pity, show mercy*
 ġemiltsiend, m., *pitier*
 ġenēalæċan, ġenēalæhte, ġenēalæht,
 W.I, *approach*
 ġeniman, ġenam, ġenōmon, ġenu-
 men, 4, *take*
 ġenōh, adj., *enough, abundant*
 ġeong, adj., *young*
 ġerād, n., *account, audit*
 ġerādegian, W.II, *call to an account*
 ġereord, n., *food, feast*
 ġerestan, W.I, *rest, lodge*
 ġesæliġ, adj., *happy, blessed*
 ġesæt, see *gesittan*
 ġesāwon, see *gesēon*
 ġescrȳdan, W.I, *clothe*
 ġescȳ, n., *pair of shoes*
 ġeseah, see *gesēon*
 ġesellan, ġesealde, ġeseald, W.I,
 give, give up, sell
 ġesēon, ġeseah, ġesāwon, ġesewen,
 5, *see*

ġesettan, W.I, *set, provide, establish*
 ġesittan, ġesæt, ġesæton, ġeseten, 5,
 sit, take a seat
 ġestaðelian, W.II, *establish*
 ġesund, adj., *unharmd, healthy*
 ġeswenċan, W.I., *afflict*
 ġeswerian, ġeswōr, ġeswōron, ġes-
 waren, 6, *swear*
 ġesyngian, W.II, *sin*
 ġetæċan, ġetāhte, ġetāht, W.I, *teach,*
 show
 ġetēon, ġetēah, ġetugon, ġetogen, 2,
 draw, train, educate
 ġetimbian, W.II, *build*
 ġetrymman, W.I, *prepare, strengthen*
 ġepenċan, ġepōhte, ġepōht, W.I,
 think
 ġeþyld, f., *patience*
 ġeþyldigian, W.II, *be patient*
 ġeunrōdsian, W.II, *be sad, make sad*
 ġewendan, W.I, *turn*
 ġeweorðan, ġewearþ, ġewurdon, ġe-
 worden, 3, *become, be made, happen*
 ġewihte, n., *weight*
 ġewilnian, W.II, *desire*
 ġewissliċe, adv., *certainly*
 ġewistfullian, W.II, *feast*
 ġewistlæċan, W.I, *feast*
 ġewitan, ġewāt, ġewiton, ġewiten, 1,
 depart, go
 ġeworden, see *ġeweorðan*
 ġewrit, n., *writing, letter*
 ġewritan, ġewrāt, ġewriton, ġewriten,
 1, *write*
 ġewundian, W.II, *wound*
 ġiedd, n., *song, speech, tale, saying*
 ġiefan, ġeaf, ġēafon, ġiefen, 5, *give*
 ġiefu, f., *gift, grace*
 ġiernan, W.I, *desire*
 ġiesthūs, n., *guesthouse, inn*

ġiet, adv., *yet, still*
 ġiestrandæg, adv., *yesterday*
 ġif, conj., *if*
 ġifta, f. plur., *marriage, wedding*
 ġingra, adj., comp. of ġeong
 glēaw, adj., *wise*
 glengan, W.I, *trim, adorn*
 God, m., *God*
 gōd, adj., *good*
 gōd, n., *good, benefit, property*
 gold, n., *gold*
 goldhord, m., n., *treasury*
 grēada, m., *bosom*
 grētan, W.I, *greet*
 guma, m., *man, warrior*
 gylt, m., *guilt, debt*

H

habban, hæfde, hæfd, W.III, *have*
 hæfde, hæfdon, see habban
 hælend, m., *savior*
 hærfest, m., *autumn*
 hæs, f., *command*
 hæþen, adj., *heathen*
 hafoc, m., *hawk*
 hāl, adj., *whole, sound*
 hām, m., *home, dwelling*
 hand, f., *hand*
 hātan, hēt, hēton, hāten, 7, *command, name*
 hātte, passive of hātan, *be named*
 hē, hēo, hit, pron., *he, she, it*
 hēafod, n., *head*
 healdan, hēold, hēoldon, healden, 7, *hold*
 healf, f., *side, half*
 heall, f., *hall*
 hearpe, f., *harp*
 hearpenægēl, m., *plectrum*
 hearpestreng, m., *harpstring*

hearpian, W.II, *play the harp*
 hefig, adj., *heavy*
 hell, f., *hell*
 helm, m., *helmet*
 heofon, m., *heaven*
 heofonlic, adj., *heavenly*
 hēold, see healdan
 heonon, adv., *hence*
 heorte, f., *heart*
 hēr, adv., *here*
 herian, W.I, *praise*
 hēt, see hātan
 hider, adv., *hither*
 hīe, nom. acc. plur. of hē, hēo, *hit*
 hild, f., *battle, war*
 hlæfdige, f., *lady*
 hlāf, m., *loaf, bread*
 hlāford, m., *lord, master*
 hlystan, W.I, *listen, hear*
 hnappian, W.II, *sleep, nap*
 hōn, hēng, hēngon, hangen, 7, *hang*
 hord, m., n., *hoard, treasure*
 hræðe, adv., *quickly*
 hrieman, W.I, *cry out*
 hring, m., *ring*
 hū, adv., *how*
 hund, m., *dog*
 hund, n., *hundred*
 hungor, m., *hunger*
 hūs, n., *house*
 hwā, hwæt, inter. and indef. pron., *who, which, what; someone, something*
 hwær, adv., conj., *where*
 hwæt, see hwā
 hwāte, m., *wheat*
 hwanon, adv., *whence*
 hwelc, inter. and indef. pron., *which, what kind of; someone*
 hwōn, adv., *somewhat, a little*

hwȳ, inst. of hwæt, *why*
 hȳrling, m., *hireling, hired servant*

I

iċ, pron., *I*
 idelhende, adj., *empty-handed*
 ieldan, W.I, *delay*
 ieldra, adj., comp. of eald
 ierfenuma, m., *heir*
 ierfeweardness, f., *inheritance*
 ierre, adj., *angry*
 ierðling, m., *farmer, plowman*
 ilc, adj., *same*
 in, adv. and prep., *in, into*
 innan, adv. and prep., *within*
 inne, adv., *within*
 intō, prep., *into*
 irnan, arn, urnon, urnen, 3, *run*

L

lācnian, W.II, *treat with medicine*
 lāċe, m., *physician*
 lāċehūs, n., *hospital*
 lādan, W.I, *lead, bring*
 læġ, see licġan
 læringmægden, n., (girl) *pupil*
 lās, adv., *less*; þē lās þe, *lest*
 lātan, lēt, lēton, lāten, 7, *let, permit, leave, abandon, cause to*
 land, n., *land*
 lange, adv., *long*
 lār, f., *wisdom, instruction, learning*
 lārēow, m., *teacher, master*
 lēaf, f., *permission*
 lecġan, læġde, læġd, W.I, *lay*
 leng, adv., comp. of lange (see 378)
 lēof, adj., *dear*
 lēoht, adj., *light*
 lēohtfæt, n., *lamp*
 leornian, W.II, *learn*
 leornung, f., *learning*
 lēoð, n., *song, poem*

libban, lifde, lifd, W.III, *live*
 liccian, W.II, *lick*
 licġan, læġ, lāġon, leġen, 5, *lie*
 lician, W.II, *please*
 liefan, W.I, *allow, permit*
 lieġ, m., n., *flame, fire*
 lif, n., *life*
 lið, n., *joint, limb*
 lufian, W.II, *love*
 lufiend, m., *lover*
 lufu, f., *love*
 lȳtel, adj., *little*
 lȳþre, adj., *base, wicked*

M

mæġ, see magan
 mægden, n., *maiden*
 mæġen, n., *strength*
 magan, mæġ, magon, meahte (mihte),
 PP., *be able*
 man, indef. pron., *one, they*
 maniġ, adj., *many*
 mann, m., *man*
 māra, adj., *more*
 mæst, adj., *most*
 meahte, see magan
 mēce, m., *sword*
 mēd, f., *reward, meed*
 miċel, adj., *much, great, large*
 mid, prep., *with, accompanying, by means of*; mid þȳ þe, *when, because*
 midd, adj., *middle of*
 mildheortness, f., *mercy, pity*
 miltestre, f., *harlot, prostitute*
 mīn, poss. adj., *my, mine*
 mislician, W.II, *displease*
 misþyncan, misþūhte, misþūht, W.I
appear incorrectly
 mōd, n., *mind, heart, courage, pride*
 morgenġiefu, f., *gift from husband to wife on morning after wedding*

mōtan, mōt, mōton, mōste, PP., *be permitted*
 murnung, f., *grief, complaint*

N

nā, adv., *no, not, never*
 nabban, contraction of *ne habban*
 nāfre, adv., *never*
 nāre, contraction of *ne wāre*
 nam, nāmon, see *niman*
 nama, m., *name*
 nān, adj., pron., *no, none, no one*
 nāt, contraction of *ne wāt*
 ne, adv., *not*
 nē, conj., adv., *nor*
 nēah, adv., adj., *near*
 nemnan, W.I., *name*
 nēod, f., *desire, zeal, earnestness*
 nese, adv., *no*
 nīehst, adj., superlative of *nēah*;
 æt nīehstan, *in the next place, there-upon*
 nīeten, n., *animal*
 niht, f., *night*
 niman, nam, nōmon, numen, 4, *take*
 niste, contraction of *ne wiste*
 nolde, contraction of *ne wolde*
 Norþmann, m., *Northman*
 nū, adv., conj., *now, now that*

O

of, prep., *from, away from, out of, concerning*
 ofer, prep., *over, above, concerning*
 oferbrædan, W.I., *cover*
 ofercuman, ofercōm, ofercōmon, ofercumen, 4, *overcome*
 oferrædan, W.I., *read thru*
 ofersāwan, ofersēow, ofersēowon, ofersāwen, 7, *sow over, oversow*

ofersēow, see *ofersāwan*
 ofslēan, ofslōh, ofslōgon, ofslagen, 6, *kill*
 oftrædlice, adv., *frequently*
 ofþyncan, ofþūhte, ofþūht, W.I., *seem amiss, displease*
 on, prep., adv., *on, in, into, among, against*
 onælan, W.I., *kindle, ignite, inflame*
 oncnāwan, oncnēow, oncnēowon, oncnāwen, 7, *recognise, perceive, know*
 ondrædan, ondrēd, ondrēdon, ondræden, 7, *fear*
 onfēng, see *onfōn*
 onfōn, onfēng, onfēngon, onfangen, 7, *take, receive*
 ongann, see *onġinnan*
 onġēan, prep., *opposite, in front of, against, towards*
 onġietan, onġeat, onġēaton, onġieten, 5, *perceive, understand*
 onġinnan, ongann, ongunnon, ongunnen, 3, *begin*
 ongunnon, see *onġinnan*
 oð, prep., conj., *up to, as far as, till, until*
 oþer, adj., *second, next, other*

P

pening, m., *penny (silver coin about the size of American dime)*
 plantian, W.II, *plant*
 pleġa, m., *quick movement, game, play*
 plegian, W.II, *play*
 pund, n., *pound (weight or money)*
 purpure, f., *purple robe*

R

rædan, W.I., *read*
 rēaf, n., *booty, wealth, dress*

reah^{te}, see reċċan
 reċċan, reah^{te}, reah^t, W.I, *explain, tell, count*
 riċe, n., *kingdom, country*
 riċeliċe, adv., *sumptuously*
 riċpere, m., *reaper*
 riċtima, m., *time of reaping, harvest*
 rose, f., *rose*
 rudu, f., *redness, blush*

S

sācerd, m., *priest*
 sǣ, f., m., *sea*
 sǣd, n., *seed*
 sǣġde, sǣġdon, see secgan
 sǣlþ, f., *happiness, good fortune*
 sæt, sǣton, see sittan
 sām^cwic, adj., *half-alive*
 sang, m., *song*
 sār, n., *pain, wound, grief*
 sārliċ, adj., *painful*
 sārliċe, adv., *painfully, with grief*
 sārness, f., *pain, grief*
 sāwan, sēow, sēowon, sāwen, 7, *sow*
 scamfæst, adj., *modest*
 scāmu, f., *shame, modesty*
 scān, see scīnan
 scaðā, m., *criminal, thief*
 scēafmǣlum, adv., *sheaf by sheaf*
 sceolde, see sculan
 scīnan, scān, scinon, scinen, 1, *shine*
 scipflota, m., *sailor, pirate*
 scop, m., *scop, gleeman, poet*
 scrūd, n., *dress, garment*
 scrȳdan, W.I, *dress*
 sculan, sceal, sculon, scolde (sceolde), PP., *be under obligation, owe, be about to*
 sē, sēo, þæt, demon. pron., rel. pron., and def. art., *that, who, which, the*

sealde, see sellan
 sǣað, m., *pit, cistern, winevat*
 seax, n., *knife, short sword*
 seċan, sōhte, sōht, W.I, *seek, visit, go to*
 secgan, sǣġde, sǣġd, W.III, *say*
 self, adj., *self, same*
 sellan, sealde, seald, W.I, *give*
 sēlest, superl. adj., *best*
 sēlra, comp. adj., *better*
 sendan, W.I, *send*
 seolfor, n., *silver*
 sēow, see sāwan
 setl, n., *seat*
 settan, W.I, *set*
 simle, adv., *always*
 singan, sang, sungon, sungen, 3, *sing*
 sittan, sæt, sǣton, seten, 5, *sit*
 siþþan, adv., conj., *afterwards; after, since*
 slacian, W.II, *delay, put off*
 slǣpan, slēp, slēpon, slǣpen, 7, *sleep*
 slēpon, see slǣpan
 smēade, see smēaġan
 smēaġan, smēade, smēad, W.III, *investigate, inquire into*
 smearcian, W.II, *smile*
 sōna, adv., *immediately; sōna swā, as soon as*
 sorg, f., *sorrow*
 sōþ, adj., *true*
 sōþ, n., *truth*
 sōþliċe, adv., *truly, verily*
 spēd, f., *success, opportunity, abundance, wealth*
 sprǣċ, f., *speech*
 standan, stōd, stōdon, standen, 6, *stand*
 stefn, f., *voice*

stiepel, m., *lower*
 stierċ, n., *calf*
 stille, adj., *at rest, silent*
 stilness, f., *quiet*
 stōw, f., *place*
 stræt, f., *road, street*
 sum, adj., pron., *some; someone, a certain one*
 sunne, f., *sun*
 sunu, m., *son*
 swā, adv., *so, as; swā hwæt swā, whatever*

swang, see *swingan*
 swēġ, m., *noise, sound, music*
 swēġcræft, m., *musical skill, music*
 swelċe, adv., conj., *likewise; as if*
 sweord, n., *sword*
 swerian, swōr, swōron, swaren, 6, *swear*

swiġe, f., *silence*
 swiġian, W.II, *be silent*
 swīn, n., *swine, pig*
 swingan, swang, swungon, swungen, 3, *beat, strike*
 swiðe, adv., *exceedingly, very*
 syngian, W.II, *sin*

T

tācan, tāhte, tāht, W.I, *teach, show*
 tēlan, W.I, *blame, censure*
 tēar, m., *tear*
 tēon, tēah, tugon, togen, 2, *draw, pull*
 tēona, m., *injury*
 ticċen, n., *kid*
 tid, f., *time, season, hour, day, occasion*
 tien, num., *ten*
 —tilia, m., *farmer, farm laborer*
 tima, m., *time, occasion*
 tintreġ, n., *torment*
 tintregian, W.II, *torture, torment*

tō, prep., *to, at*
 tō, adv., *too*
 tōdæg, adv., *today*
 tōgædere, adv., *together*
 tōġēanes, prep., *towards*
 tūn, m., *enclosure, estate, farm*
 tunge, f., *tongue*
 twēġen, twā, tū, num., *two*
 twēntiġ, num., *twenty*
 twēonian, W.II, *doubt*
 twīn, n., *linen*

þ

þā, adv., conj., *then, when*
 þær, adv., conj., *there, where*
 þæron, adv., *thereon, therein*
 þæt, conj., *that*
 þancian, W.II, *thank*
 þanon, adv., *thence*
 þe, rel. pron., *who, whom, which, that*
 þeah, adv., conj., *tho, altho; however, nevertheless*
 þearle, adv., *severely, exceedingly*
 þeġnung, f., *service, retinue, meal, first course*
 þēow, m., *servant*
 þēow, adj., *not free, serving*
 þēowa, m., *servant*
 þēowian, W.II, *serve*
 þēs, þeos, þis, demon. pron., *this*
 þīn, poss. adj., *thy, thine*
 þing, n., *thing; plur., business, affairs, property*
 þonne, adv., conj., *then, when*
 þonne, conj., *than*
 þrie, þrēo, num., *three*
 þū, pron., *thou*
 þurh, prep., *thru, by*
 þus, adv., *thus*
 þūsend, num., *thousand*

þylliċ, adj., *such*

þyncan, þūhte, þūht, W.I, *seem*,
appear

U

underfōn, underfēng, underfēngon,

underfangen, 7, *receive*

understandan, understōd, understō-
don, *understanden*, 6, *understand*

unforwandiendiċe, adv., *without bash-
fulness*

unġecnāwen, adj., *unknown*

unġelimp, n., *misfortune*

unġewuneliċ, adj., *unaccustomed*

unhold, adj., *faithless, hostile*

unrōt, adj., *sad*

unstille, adj., *restless*

ūp, ūpp, adv., *up*

uppan, prep., *on, upon*

ūre, poss. adj., *our, ours*

ūt, adv., *out*

uton, *let us* (with infinitive)

W

wædla, m., *poor man*

wæstm, m., *growth, increase, fruit*,
crop

wæter, n., *water*

wāt, see wītan

wamb, f., *belly, stomach*

wē, nom. plur. of iċ

weall, m., *wall*

wearp, see weorpan

wearð, see weorðan

weax, n., *wax*

weaxan, wēox, wēoxon, weaxen, 7,
grow, increase

weġ, m., *way, road*

wel, adv., *well*

weliġ, adj., *wealthy*

welwillendness, f., *benevolence*

wēnan, W.I, *expect, hope, believe, think*

weorpan, wearp, wurpon, worpen, 3,
cast, throw

weorðan, wearþ, wurdon, worden, 3,
become, be made, happen

weorþfull, adj., *worthy, honorable*

weorðliċ, adj., *honorable*

weorðliċe, adv., *honorably*

weorþscipe, m., *dignity, honor*

wēox, see weaxan

wer, m., *man, husband*

werod, n., *multitude, troop, army*

wesan, wæs, wæron, 5, *be, exist*

wierþe, adj., *worthy, honorable*

wīf, n., *woman, wife*

wiġ, n., *war, battle*

willā, m., *will, wish*

willan, wolde, A, *will, wish*

wilnian, W.II, *desire, wish*

wīn, n., *wine*

wiġeard, m., *vineyard*

wīs, adj., *wise*

witan, wāt, witon, wisse (wiste),
PP., *know*

wītega, m., *prophet, wise man*

wītner, m., *torturer*

witodliċe, adv., *truly, verily, certainly*

wið, prep., *against, opposite, alongside*
of, by

wiðūtan, adv., prep., *outside*

wolde, woldon, see willan

wōp, m., *weeping*

word, n., *word*

wræcliċe, adv., *in exile, abroad*

wriðan, wrāþ, wriþon, wriþen, 1,
twist, bind, wrap

wund, f., *wound*

wundrian, W.II, *wonder*

wunung, f., *dwelling*
wurdon, see *weorðan*
wynsum, adj., *pleasing, pleasant*
wyr̥t, f., *vegetable, plant, root*

Y

yfel, adj., *evil*
yfel, n., *evil*
yfele, adv., *ill, badly*
ymbe, prep., *about, concerning*
ymsittend, m., *neighbor*



Nouns in "dom", "had" are
masculine, or in "ath" or "oth",
"ing", "st"

—
20

8

—
8

—
28

4

um

as

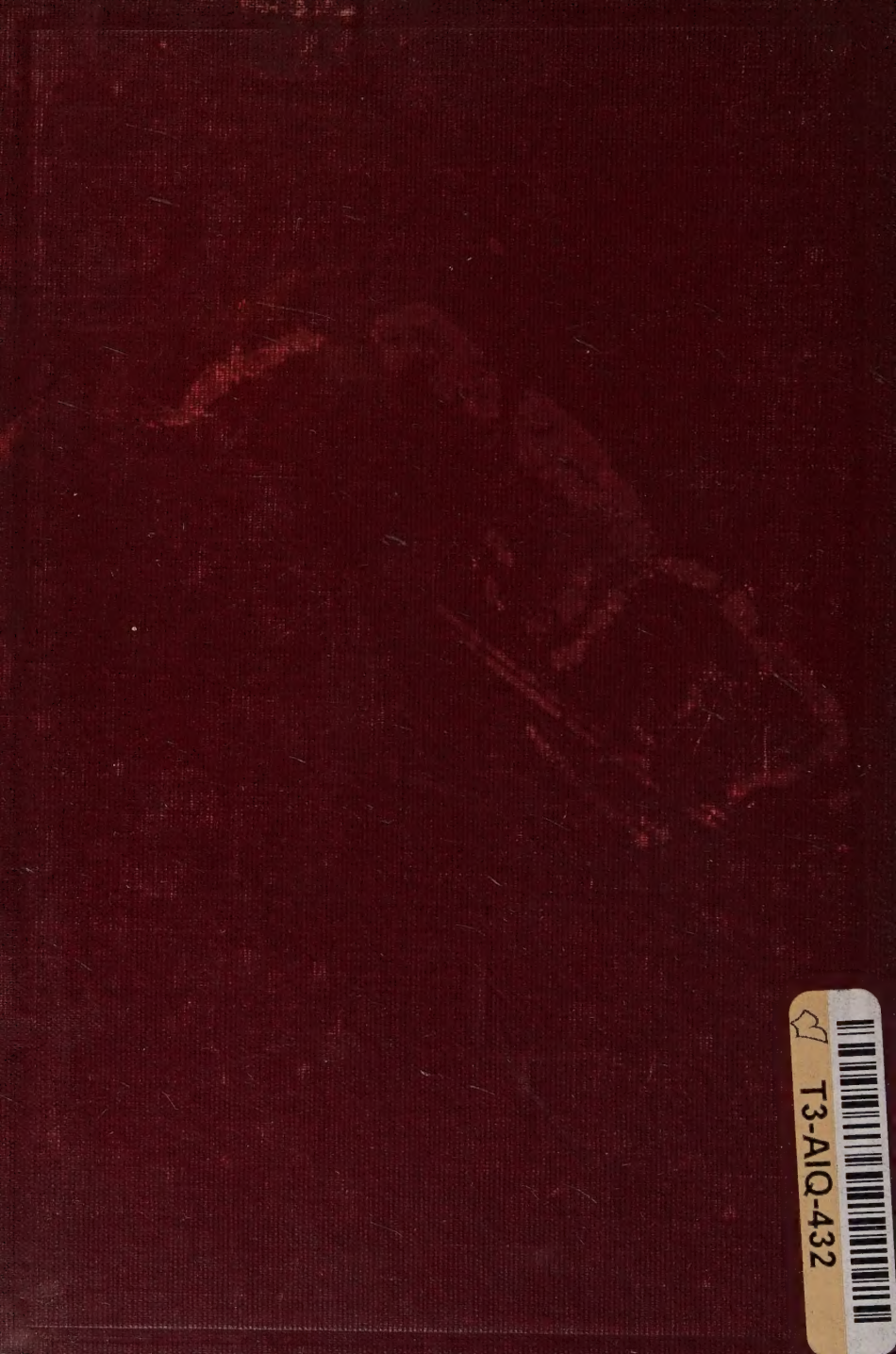
um

If a noun ends in "e" it follows.
is very often of "ja" declension.

guess.

se slau cta stana
dars stanz dars stana
daen stau dazm stau
dons stan cta stana
dy stanz dars stana
darg dagas engl as
les a
le me
af as
le me

drifan dray dri fou drifu
budan beah budon buden
singan sung sungon singen
beran burh boron born
spear sparc spracn spuen
faran for foron faron
fartan fit litan baston
frallen foll follon feallen



T3-AIQ-432

